Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Z4 sDrive30i
Z4 sDrive35i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

CarManuals2.com

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

© 2009 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
US English I/09, 09 02 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

CarManuals2.com

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 230.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
22 Letters and numbers
23 Voice activation system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
41 Adjustments
48 Transporting children safely
50 Driving
64 Everything under control
77 Technology for driving comfort and safety
88 Lamps
92 Climate
98 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
110 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
118 Navigation system
119 Destination entry
128 Destination guidance
134 What to do if …

Entertainment
138 On/off and tone
141 Radio
144 Satellite radio
146 CD/DVD player and CD/DVD changer
153 Music collection
158 External devices

Communications
164 Telephone
176 Contacts
178 BMW Assist

Mobility
188 Refueling
190 Wheels and tires
197 Under the hood
202 Maintenance
204 Care
208 Replacing components
213 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
220 Technical data
223 Short commands for the voice activation system
230 Everything from A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Manual easy to find. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g. on technical aspects, can also be found on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When you ordered your BMW, you chose various items of equipment. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases that features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and powerful electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. You should therefore have the corresponding work on your vehicle performed only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Original BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.

BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.

Original BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.

CarManuals2.com

Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radio or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

▷ Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

⚠ Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

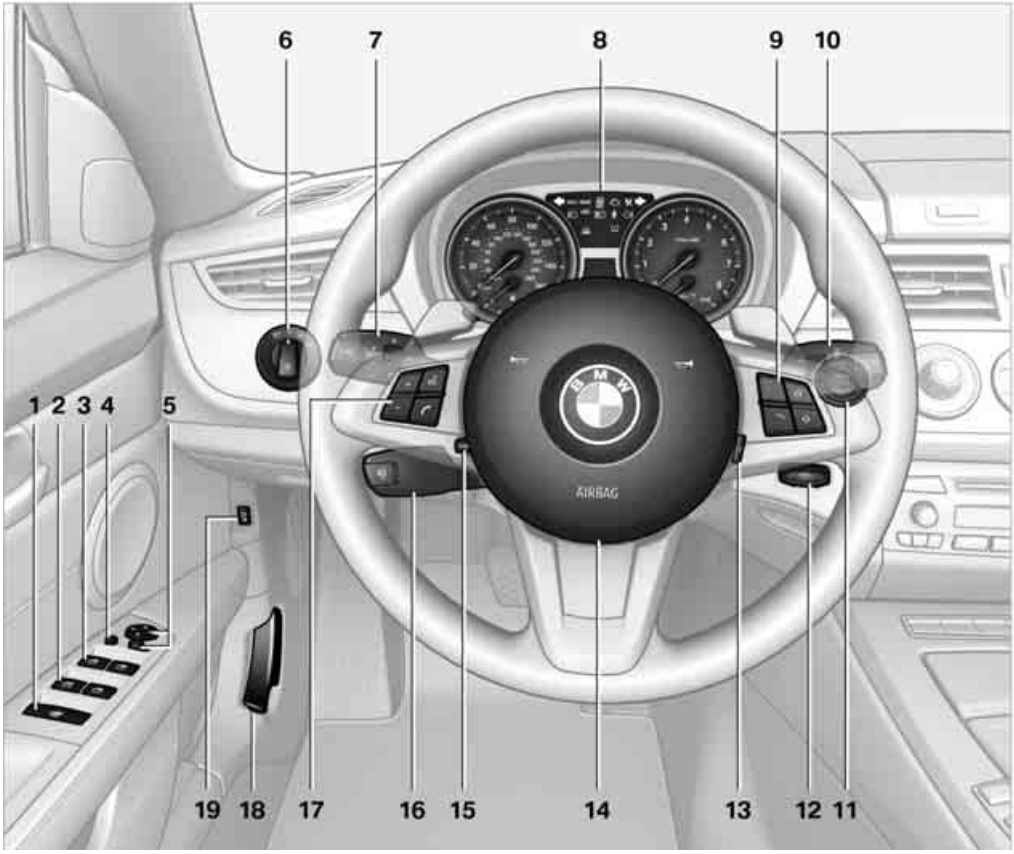
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Opening and closing windows jointly 37

2 Opening and closing rear windows 37

3 Opening and closing front windows 37

4 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 45

5 Adjusting exterior mirrors, automatic curb monitor* 45

6 Parking lamps 88

Low beams 88

Automatic headlamp control* 88
Adaptive Head Light* 89

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

7

Turn signals 59

High beams, headlamp flasher 90

Roadside parking lamps* 90

BC Computer 65

Settings and information about the vehicle 68

Instrument lighting 90

8 Instrument cluster 12

9 Buttons* on the steering wheel

Changing radio station
Selecting music track
Scrolling through phone book and lists with stored phone numbers

Next entertainment source

Recirculated-air mode 97

10

Windshield wipers 60

Rain sensor* 60

11 START STOP ENGINE Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 50

12 Ignition lock 50

13 Steering wheel heating* 47

14 Horn, the entire surface

15 Adjusting the steering wheel 46

16 Cruise control* 61

CarManuals2.com

17 Buttons* on the steering wheel

Telephone*:

- Press: accepting and ending a call, starting to dial* selected phone number. Redialing if no phone number is selected
- Press longer: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice activation system* 23

18 Releasing the hood 197

19 Opening the luggage compartment lid 33

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Instrument cluster

CarManuals2.com

1 Speedometer
2 Indicator lamps for turn signals
3 Indicator and warning lamps 13
4 Tachometer 64
5 Engine oil temperature 65
6 Display for
- ▷ Clock 64
- ▷ Outside temperature 64
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 13

7 Display for
- ▷ Position of automatic transmission* 54
- ▷ Gear display for 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch* 56
- ▷ Computer 65
- ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven 69
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 64
- ▷ Programs for Dynamic Driving Control 79
- ▷ Checking the engine oil level* 198
- ▷ Settings and information 68
- ▷ ⚠ There is a Check Control message 73

8 Fuel gauge 65
9 Resetting the trip odometer 64

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

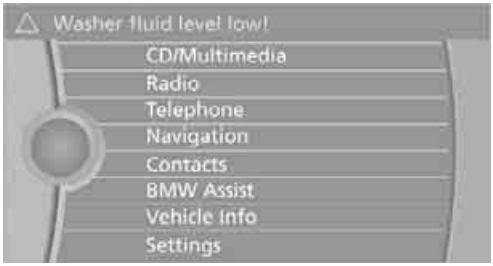
Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Some lamps are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages



Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

You can call up more information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control, refer to page 73.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps notify you that certain functions are active:

High beams/headlamp flasher 90

Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC is regulating the propulsive forces in order to maintain driving stability 78

Parking brake set 52

Canada: Parking brake set 52

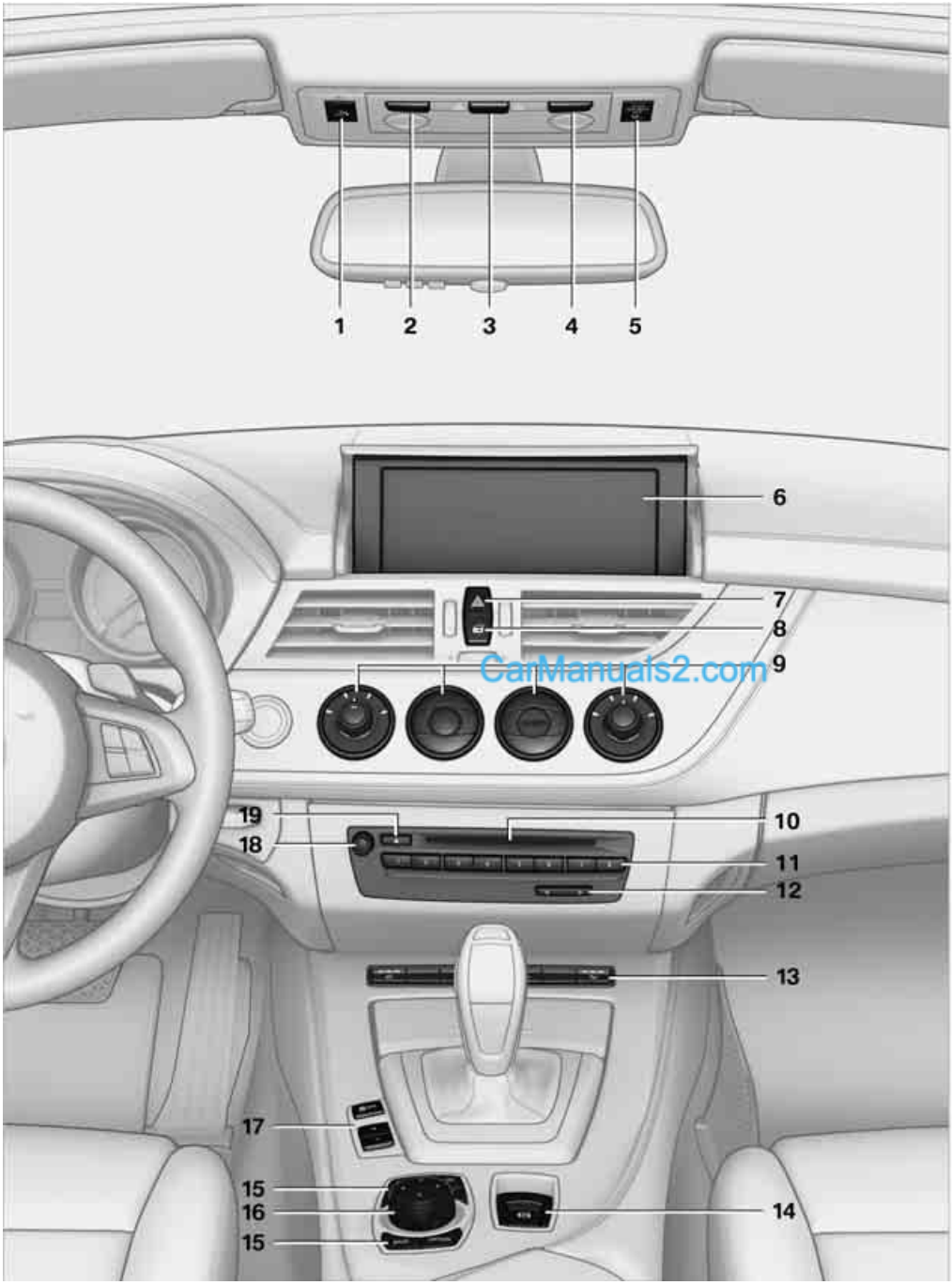
Engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions 203

Canada: Engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions 203

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

1 SOS: initiating an Emergency Request call* 213
2 Reading lamp 91
3 Interior lamps 90
4 Reading lamp 91
5 Passenger airbag status lamp* 86
6 Control Display 16
7 Hazard warning flashers
8 Central locking system 32
9 Automatic climate control

Air distribution 95

AUTO Automatic air distribution and flow rate 96

Cooling function 96

Recirculated-air mode, automatic recirculated-air control 97

MAX Maximum cooling 96

Air flow, residual heat utilization 96

Defrosting windows 97

Rear window defroster 97

10 Hard drive for
- ▷ Audio CD 138
- ▷ Navigation DVD for Business navigation system* 118

11 Programmable memory keys 21
12 Changing
- ▷ Radio station 141
- ▷ Track 146

13 Heated seats* 43

Park Distance Control PDC* 77

Close the retractable hardtop 37

Open the retractable hardtop 37

14 Parking brake 52
15 Buttons on the controller 16
For selecting the menus directly
16 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved horizontally in four directions
17 Buttons for the Dynamic Driving Control 79
18 Switching audio sources on/off and adjusting volume 138
19 Ejecting of
- ▷ Audio CD 138
- ▷ Navigation DVD for Business navigation system* 118

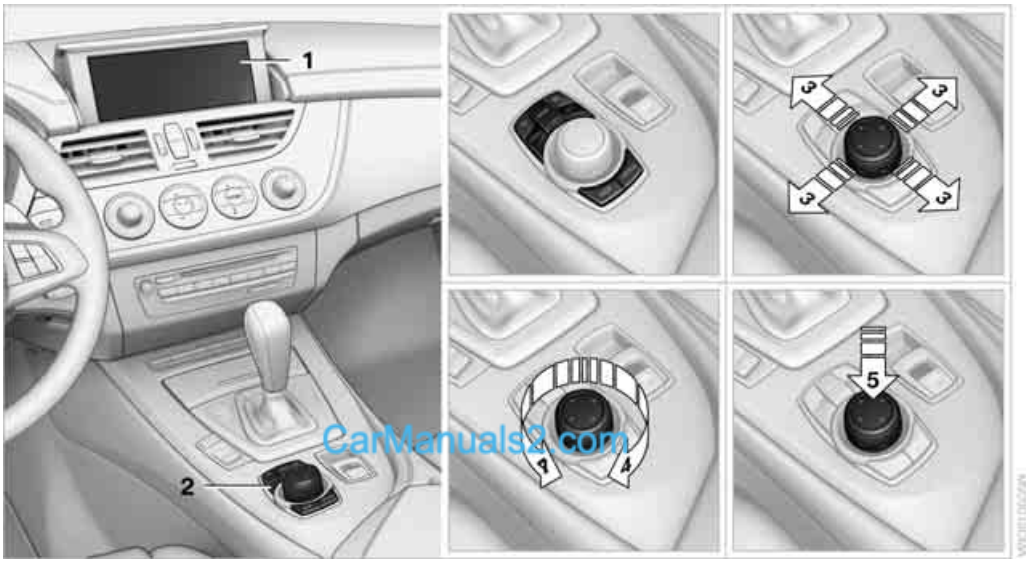
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a single central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with button
You can use the buttons to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

- ▷ Move in four directions, arrow **3**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **4**
- ▷ Push, arrow **5**

⚠ Operate the controller only when traffic and road conditions allow this, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

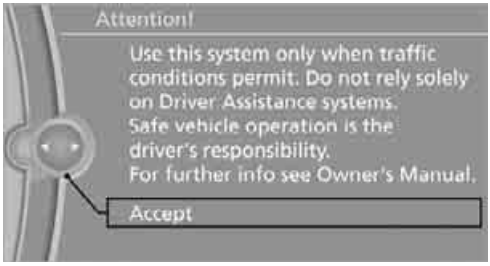
Buttons on the controller

Button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu
RADIO	Open the Radio menu
CD	Open the CD/Entertainment Server menu
NAV	Open the Navigation menu
TEL	Open the Telephone menu
BACK	Display the previous menu
OPTION	Open the Options menu

CarManuals2.com

Operating principle

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, refer to page 50, the following message is displayed on the Control Display:

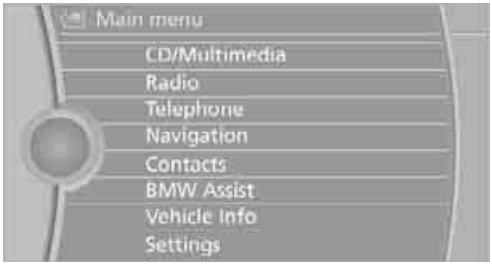


To hide the message:
Press the controller.
The main menu is displayed.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.
The main menu is displayed.

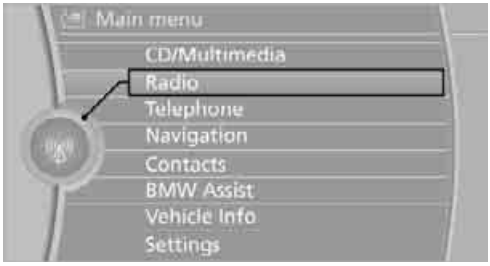


All iDrive functions can be called up via five menu items.

Selecting menu items

The menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

A new menu is displayed or the function is executed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

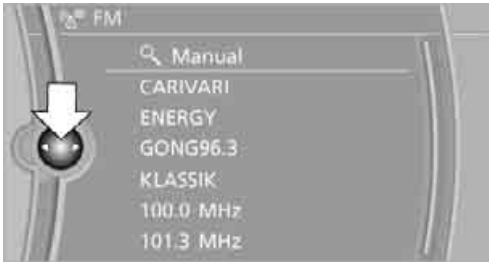
Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g. "Settings"

Changing between panels

After selecting a menu item, e.g. "Radio", a new menu is displayed on a panel. The panels can overlap.

Move the controller to the left or right to change between the panels.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu appears.

The "Options" menu contains the following:

▷ Screen settings, refer to page 20.

▷ Control options for the selected menu.

Adjusting settings

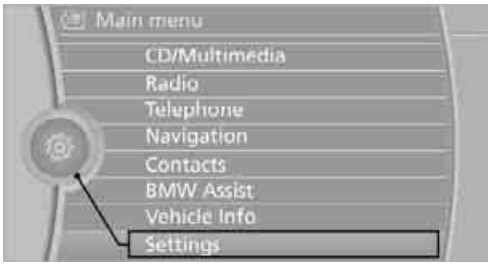
1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.

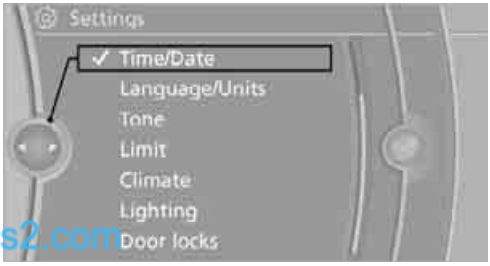
▷ The scroll bar on the right side indicates whether additional menu items or settings can be selected that are currently not visible.◀

Example: setting the clock

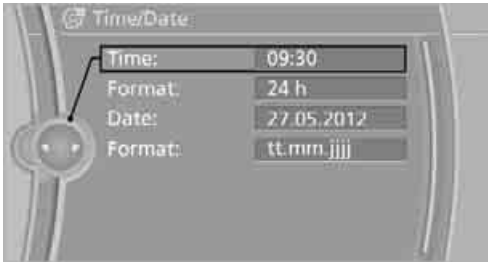
1. **MENU** Press the button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



3. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



4. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Status information

1 Time

2 Display for:

- ▷ Reception strength of the wireless network, depends on the mobile phone
- ▷ Incoming, outgoing or missed call
- ▷ SMS* received

3 Display for:

- ▷ Entertainment:
  Radio, CD/DVD, external devices, TV*
- ▷ Telephone*:
  Name of the mobile phone paired with the vehicle

4 Sound output is switched off or display for traffic bulletins*:

- ▷ "TI":
  Traffic bulletins are switched on.
- ▷ No display:
  Traffic bulletins are switched off.

Other displays:
Status information is temporarily hidden during Check Control message displays or entries via the voice activation system*.

Switching the control display on/off

1. **OPTION** Press the button.
2. "Close display"

Press the controller to switch on.

Split screen

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g. information from the computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

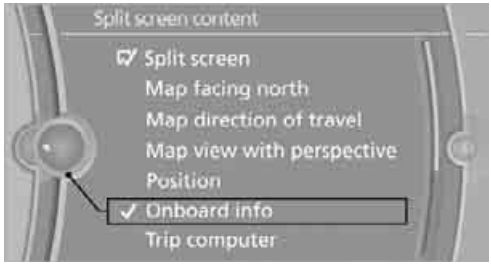
1. **OPTION** Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

The split screen is activated.

Selecting the display for the split screen content

When the split screen is switched on, you can select the content displayed on the screen.

1. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
2. Select the display.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Programmable memory keys

Certain iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory keys and called up directly, e.g. radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

Storing functions

1. Select the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for longer than 2 seconds.

Example for programmable memory keys

Switch the voice instructions for the navigation on/off.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol using the controller.
4. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for longer than 2 seconds.

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the button.

The function is executed immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying memory key assignments

Touch the button with a finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

Displaying brief information

1 ... 6 Touch the button.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Displaying detailed information

1 ... 6 Touch the button and hold.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Letters and numbers

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

CarManuals2.com

Symbol	Function
⇤	Press the controller: delete one letter or number
⇤	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Entering letters
123	Entering numbers

Wordmatch concept during navigation

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

Destination search: the entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ The only letters offered for entering addresses are those for which data are available.
- ▷ Town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Voice activation system

The concept

The voice activation system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

CarManuals2.com

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. It is not necessary to use the controller.

The voice activation system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

the voice activation system uses a special microphone located in the area of the steering column.

Precondition

Via iDrive, select the language in which the voice activation system is operating, so that the spoken commands can be identified. Selecting the language for iDrive, refer to page 75.

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

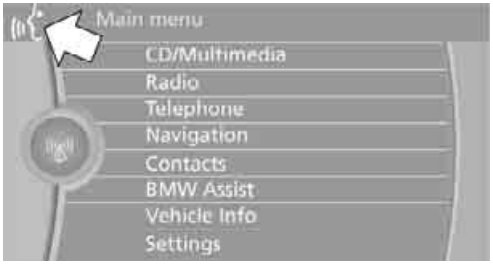
›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

Saying commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal indicate that the voice activation system is ready to receive spoken commands.



2. Say the command.
   The command appears on the Control Display.

This symbol appears on the Control Display when you can enter additional commands.
If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the item of equipment via iDrive.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Terminating or canceling voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹

In dialogs that call for a text of your choice, the procedure can only be canceled using the button on the steering wheel.

Possible commands

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.

Having the possible commands read aloud

›Voice commands‹

For example, if "CD/DVD" is selected, the commands for operating CD/Multimedia are read aloud.

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions immediately, irrespective of which menu item is selected, refer to page 223.

CarManuals2.com

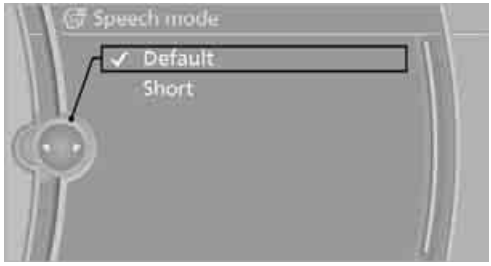
Example: selecting the track of a CD

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. Select the music track, e.g.:
   ›CD track 4‹
   System says:
   ››Track 4‹‹

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter variant. In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"



4. Select a setting:
   - "Default"
   - "Short"

Notes

For information on voice control of the telephone, refer also to the separate Owner's Manual.◀

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection. Use the emergency button near the interior rearview mirror.
- Pronounce the commands and digits smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses. This also applies when spelling out destinations during destination entry.
- When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice activation system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and retractable hardtop closed to prevent interference from outside noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Remote control

Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is automatically recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. Use each remote control at least twice a year for longer road trips in order to maintain the batteries' charge status. In cars with convenient access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 36.

The settings called up and implemented when the car is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the car, refer to Personal Profile, next column.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in the remote control, page 202.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 101
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 31

New remote controls

Your BMW center can supply new remote controls with integrated keys as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set many of your BMW's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences. Without any action on your part, Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car, the remote control used for the purpose is recognized and the settings stored for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your personal settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your car was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls. They are stored for two remote controls if convenient access* is in use.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, refer to the specified pages.

- ▷ Assignment of programmable memory keys, refer to page 21
- ▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is unlocked, refer to page 29
- ▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 32
- ▷ Automatic call-up* of the driver's seat position after unlocking, refer to page 43
- ▷ Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 59

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

- Settings for the display on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster:
  - 12h/24h format of the clock, refer to page 71
  - Date format, refer to page 72
  - Brightness of Control Display, refer to page 76
  - Language on the Control Display, refer to page 75
  - Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances, and temperature, refer to page 68
- Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC*, refer to page 77
- Light settings:
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 88
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 89
  - Daytime running lamps, refer to page 89
- Automatic climate control: activating/deactivating AUTO program, cooling function and automatic recirculated-air control, setting temperature, air flow rate and distribution, refer to page 95 ff
- Entertainment:
  - Audio volume, refer to page 138
  - Tone control, refer to page 138
  - Volume, refer to page 139

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid
- Fuel filler door
- Center armrest*

CarManuals2.com

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Using the door lock
- In cars with convenient access*, via the handles on the driver's and passenger's doors

In addition, if the remote control is used, the welcome lamps, interior lamps and the door's courtesy lamps* are switched on or off. The alarm system* is also armed or disarmed.
For further details of the alarm system, refer to page 33.

Operating from inside

By means of the button for central locking, refer to page 32.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using the remote control

Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

To operate the retractable hardtop with the remote control, the doors and luggage compartment lid must be closed and the cargo bay partition must be folded down and engaged on both sides. Refer also to page 38.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps* and the welcome lamps come on.

Setting unlocking characteristics

You can set whether only the driver's door or the entire vehicle is to be unlocked when the button is pressed for the first time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the driver's door and fuel filler door. Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.
5. Press the controller.

Convenient opening*: Windows and hardtop

Within a range of approx. 13 ft/4 m from the vehicle, you can open the retractable hardtop using the remote control for convenient access.

Hold the button down.
The windows and the retractable hardtop are opened if the doors are closed.

If you continue pressing the button, the windows move up.

Watch during the opening process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the opening process.◀

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

CarManuals2.com

Convenient closing*

Within a range of approx. 13 ft/4 m from the vehicle, you can close the retractable hardtop and the windows using the remote control for convenient access.

Hold the LOCK button down.
The retractable hardtop and the windows are closed.

Watch during the closing process to ensure that no one is injured. Releasing the button interrupts the closing process.◀

Switching on interior lamps

While the car is locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Unlocking the luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid swings back and up when opened. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance. To avoid locking yourself out by accident, do not place the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked luggage compartment lid is locked again after closing.
Before and after each trip, check that the luggage compartment lid has not been inadvertently unlocked.◀

Convenient loading*

Within a range of approx. 13ft/4m from the vehicle you can use the remote control for convenient access to half close the retractable hardtop when it is open to ease loading of the cargo bay.

1. Briefly press the button and, within one second, press again and hold until the retractable hardtop stops in an intermediate position. The luggage compartment lid opens slightly.
2. Open the luggage compartment lid, press the cargo bay partition upward and stow the cargo in the cargo bay.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

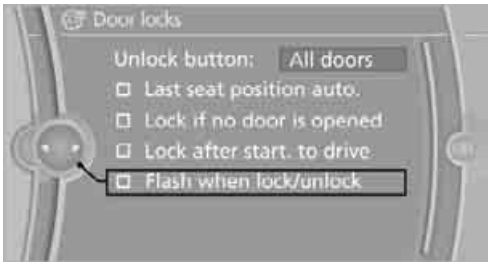
3. Press down the cargo bay partition until it engages on both sides and close the luggage compartment lid.
4. Press the button for a longer period to fold the retractable hardtop back in.

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"



4. press the controller

Flashing when locking/unlocking the vehicle is switched on.

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. Use the remote control on an extended trip to recharge the battery, refer to page 28. The remote control for convenient access* contains a battery that may have to be changed, refer to page 36.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communications Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

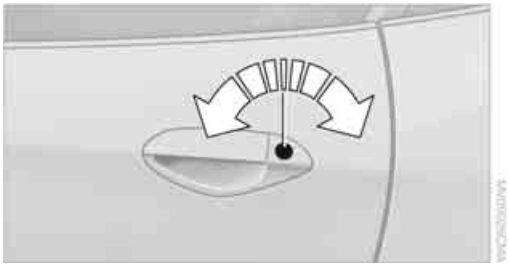
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Opening and closing: Using the door lock



You can set the way in which the car is unlocked, refer to page 29.

Convenient operation

You can operate the windows and the retractable hardtop via the door lock.

Hold the key in the position for unlocking or locking.

During each closing procedure, and when opening the retractable hardtop, watch the process and ensure that no one becomes trapped. Releasing the key stops the operation.

CarManuals2.com

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can lock and unlock the driver's door by turning the integrated key to the corresponding limit positions in the door lock.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing: From the inside*

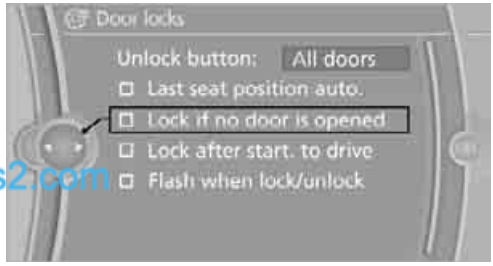
This button* serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

You can also set the situations in which the car locks:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle after a brief time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle when you drive away.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

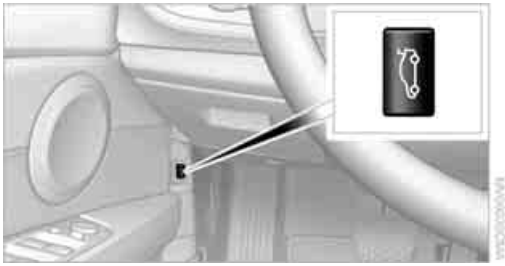
⚠ Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. You should therefore take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle so that the latter can be opened from outside.◀

Luggage compartment lid

▷ In order to avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the luggage compartment lid.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Opening from inside



Press the button: the luggage compartment lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

Press on the top half of the BMW emblem or, for approx. 1 second, on the button of the remote control:
The luggage compartment can be opened.

Emergency release*

Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Closing

CarManuals2.com

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

To close the luggage compartment lid, press it down lightly. The lid is closed automatically.◀

Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- When a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid is opened
- To movements inside the vehicle: Interior motion sensor, refer to page 34
- When the car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away
- When there is an interruption in the power supply from the battery

The alarm system signals unauthorized entry attempts for a short time by means of:

- An acoustic alarm
- Switching on the hazard warning flashers
- Flashing the high beams

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Arming and disarming

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the luggage compartment lid using the button of the remote control even if the alarm system is armed, refer to page 30. The lid is locked and monitored again as soon as it is closed.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation:

Press the button for at least three seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching off an alarm

- ▷ Unlock the car with the remote control, refer to page 29.
- ▷ Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- ▷ The indicator lamp under the inside rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood or luggage compartment lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. The interior motion sensor and the tilt alarm sensor are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- ▷ If the indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. to attempts to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle.

Interior motion sensor

The interior of the car is monitored up to the height of the seat cushions. Thus the alarm system is activated together with the interior motion sensor even if the hardtop is open. The alarm can be triggered unintentionally by falling objects such as leaves, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▷ In duplex garages
- ▷ During transport on car-carrying trains, boats/ships or on a trailer
- ▷ When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Convenient access*

Convenient access enables you to enter your vehicle without needing to hold the remote control in your hand. All you need to do is wear the remote control close to your body, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle detects the corresponding remote control within the immediate vicinity or in the passenger compartment.

Convenient access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking the vehicle
- ▷ Unlocking the luggage compartment lid separately
- ▷ Starting the engine
- ▷ Convenient closing

Functional requirement

- ▷ The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid can only be locked when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is outside of the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked again until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is inside the vehicle.

Comparison to the standard remote control

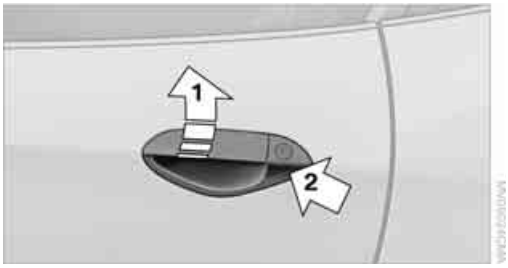
In general, there is no difference between using convenient access or pressing the buttons on the remote control to carry out the functions mentioned above. You should therefore first familiarize yourself with the instructions on opening and closing starting on page 28.

Special features regarding the use of convenient access are described below.

▷ If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing the windows or retractable hardtop, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Please repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.◀

CarManuals2.com

Releasing



Pull the handle up, arrow **1**. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

Press on the surface, arrow **2**. This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

▷ To preserve the battery, please make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.◀

Window and convertible top operation

With the ignition at radio readiness or beyond, you can open and close the windows and the convertible top when a remote control is located inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the luggage compartment lid separately

Press the button on the outside of the luggage compartment lid. This corresponds to pressing the button.

▷ If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the locked vehicle's cargo bay after the luggage compartment lid is closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning flashers flash and an acoustic signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

Radio readiness is switched on by pressing the start/stop button, refer to page 50.

▷ Do not depress the brake or the clutch, otherwise the engine will start.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Starting the engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the ignition switch, refer to page 50.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off when the selector lever is in position P, refer to page 52. To switch the engine off when the selector lever is in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition switch.

Before driving a vehicle with automatic transmission into a car wash

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition switch.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

CarManuals2.com

Convenient access may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this happens, open or close the vehicle via the buttons on the remote control or using the integrated key. To start the engine afterward, insert the remote control into the ignition switch.

Warning lamps

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when you attempt to start the engine: the engine cannot be started. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition switch.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up while the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery in the remote control.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for convenient access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control, refer to page 28.

2. Remove the cover.
3. Insert the new battery with the plus side facing up.
4. Press the cover on to close.

Take the old battery to a battery collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

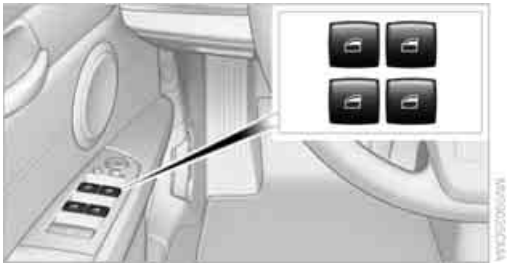
To prevent injuries, watch the windows while closing them.

Take the remote control with you when you leave the car, otherwise children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Opening, closing

Individually



- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point:
  The window opens as long as you press the switch.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  The window opens automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Jointly

- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point:
  All windows open as long as you press the switch.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
  All windows open automatically. Press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

You can close all windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

CarManuals2.com

After switching off the ignition

When the remote control is removed or the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the windows for approx. 1 minute as long as no door is opened.

Convenient operation

For information on convenient operation via the remote control or the door lock, refer to page 29 or 31. For information on closing with convenient access, refer to Locking on page 30.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system check and clear the window's travel path prior to closing it, otherwise the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories that might interfere with window movement. Otherwise the pinch protection system could be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, or if ice on the windows, etc., prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch again past the resistance point within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without pinch protection.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Retractable hardtop

The retractable hardtop combines reliable weather protection with simple and convenient operation.

Please note:

CarManuals2.com

- It is advisable that you close the retractable hardtop when you park the vehicle. Not only does the closed hardtop protect the vehicle interior against unanticipated weather damage, it also offers theft protection. However, even when the hardtop is closed, valuables should only be stored in the locked cargo bay.
- Do not attach roof rack systems to the retractable hardtop, and in particular do not attach magnetic racks.
- Do not attach rack systems to the luggage compartment lid, and in particular do not attach magnetic racks.
- When the retractable hardtop is operated, the luggage compartment lid swings back and up. Before operating the retractable hardtop, ensure that there is enough clearance, e.g. in tight parking spaces.
- If you open the hardtop while it is wet, e.g. after driving in the rain, water may drip into the cargo bay. If necessary, remove items from the cargo bay beforehand to avoid water stains or soiling.

Do not place any objects on the retractable hardtop or on the luggage compartment lid, otherwise they could fall during movements of the retractable hardtop and cause damage or injury.
Driving when the hardtop is not fully opened or not fully closed may result in damage or injury. Do not reach into the mechanism while the hardtop is opening or closing. Keep children away from the swiveling area of the retractable hardtop.◀

The retractable hardtop cannot be moved at temperatures below +14 °F/–10 °C. A message appears on the Control Display.◀

The retractable hardtop can only be opened and closed when the vehicle is stationary. To avoid causing damage, do not drive off until the hardtop has stopped moving.◀

Before opening and closing

Do not let the hardtop stop in an intermediate position when opening or closing. Otherwise, there is the danger of personal injury since the hardtop will be lowered automatically after a few minutes.◀

- Comply with the safety precautions described above.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid is closed.
- The vehicle should be parked on fairly level ground. Excessive angle is indicated by a lamp.
- Fold down the cargo bay partition and make sure it engages, refer to the instructions below.
- Do not place any objects next to or on the cargo bay partition and close the storage compartment on the left side of the cargo bay.
- Do not exceed the maximum loading height under the cargo bay partition; refer to the label in the cargo bay showing a line indicating the maximum height.

Folding down the cargo bay partition

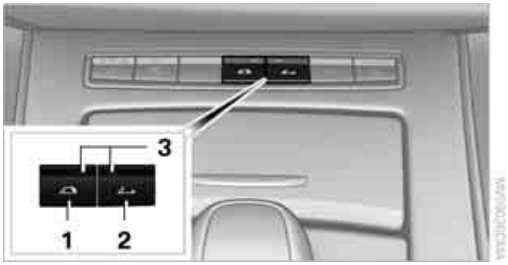
Before opening the hardtop, close the cargo bay partition, arrow, and make sure it engages on both sides.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Opening and closing

When the vehicle is stationary and at radio readiness or beyond, refer to page 50:

▷ If possible, conserve the battery by only operating the retractable hardtop when the engine is running.
Before closing the retractable hardtop, remove all foreign objects from the windshield frame as these could prevent the hardtop from closing properly.◀



1 Press button **1**.
The retractable hardtop closes.

2 Press button **2**. The retractable hardtop opens.

3 LEDs

▷ The side windows move down when the hardtop is opened or closed. Convenient closing*: If you continue pressing the buttons after the LED **3** goes out, the windows move back up.◀

If the windows pause briefly as they move, this is for technical reasons and is not a malfunction.

LEDs

In the following situations, a message appears on the Control Display or an acoustic signal sounds in addition to the LED lighting up:

▷ While the hardtop is being operated, the green LED lights up. It goes out as soon as the top is fully opened or closed.

▷ If the red LED flashes when you release the switch, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.

▷ If the red LED lights up when the switch is pressed, the cargo bay partition is folded up, the luggage compartment lid is not closed, the vehicle is standing on a strong incline or there is a malfunction. The retractable hardtop cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the switch for hardtop operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pushing or pulling the switch.

⚠ Open or close the hardtop fully; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage when driving.
Do not interrupt and resume the closing procedure several times in close succession as this could damage the mechanism.◀

▷ If the hardtop is not fully opened or closed, the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened and the windows cannot be moved.◀

Convenient operation with remote control or via door lock

Refer to pages 30 and 31.

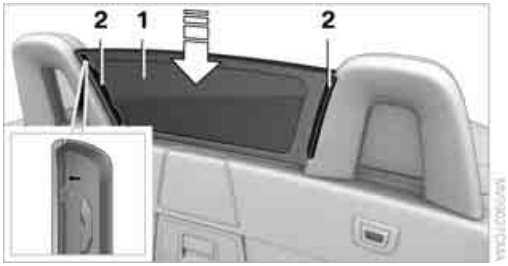
CarManuals2.com

Wind deflector*

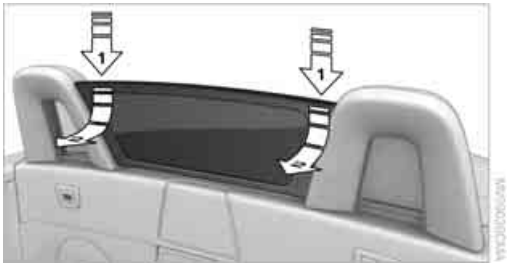
The wind deflector keeps air movements in the passenger compartment to a minimum when the hardtop is open and provides an even more comfortable ride, particularly at high speeds.

Installation

1. Insert the wind deflector **1** into the holders **2** on the rollover bars; the arrow should point in the direction of travel.



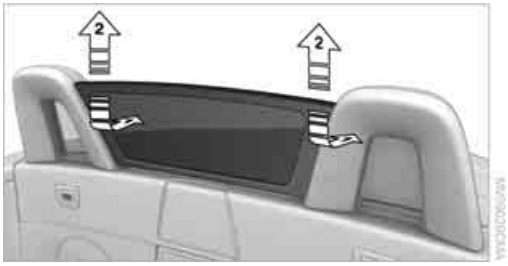
2. Push the wind deflector down, arrow **1**, and then push down and forward simultaneously, arrow **2**, until it engages.



The wind deflector must engage firmly, otherwise it could become detached at higher vehicle speeds.◀

Removing the wind deflector

1. Push the wind deflector down and back simultaneously, arrow **1**, to disengage it from the catch mechanism.



2. Pull the wind deflector upward out of the holders, arrow **2**.

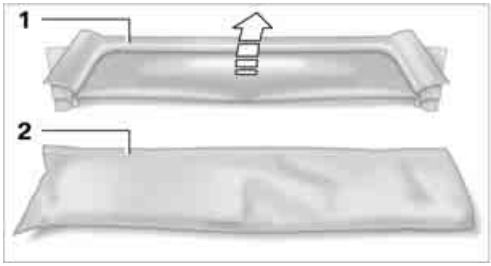
Clothes hooks

Clothes hooks **1** are located on the wind deflector panels in the rollover bars.

Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do, they could endanger the passengers, for example during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Storage

1. Fold the wind deflector **1** and slide it into the storage pouch **2**.



2. You can store the wind deflector in the rear storage shelf behind the seats.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Adjustments

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In conjunction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 48.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off. No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
CarManuals2.com
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the passenger is sitting correctly, e.g. keeping his or her feet or legs in the footwell and not on the dashboard; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag deploys.
Make sure that passengers do not lean their heads against the side airbag; otherwise, serious injuries could result if the airbag suddenly deployed.◀

Even if you follow all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 85.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has two seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt in the lap area sits low across the hips and does not press against the abdomen.
The safety belt must not rest against the throat, run across sharp edges, pass over hard or fragile objects or be pinched. Fasten the safety belt so that it sits as snugly as possible against the lap and shoulder without being twisted. Otherwise the belt could slide over your hips and injure your abdomen in the event of a frontal collision.
Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut, otherwise its restraining effect could be impaired.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 44.

Seats

Note before adjusting

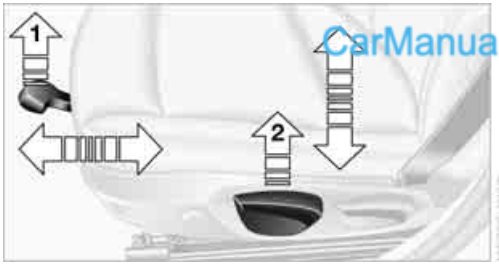
Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
On the passenger seat as well, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Note the information on safety belt damage on page 45.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Manual adjustment

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 41 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀



CarManuals2.com

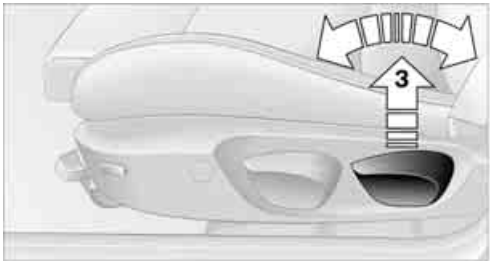
Longitudinal direction

Pull lever **1** and slide the seat to the desired position.
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Height

Pull lever **2** and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest

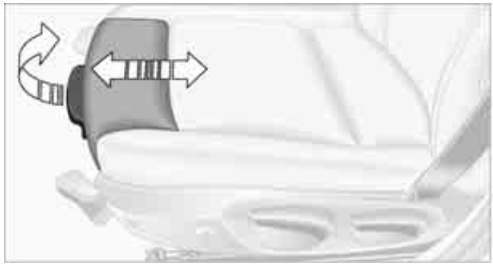


Pull lever **3** and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Tilt*

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

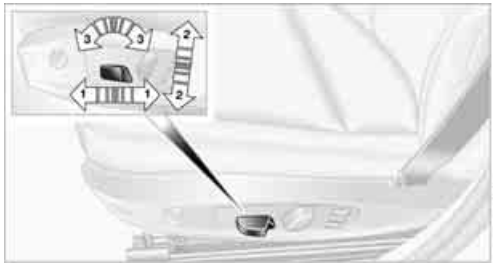
Thigh support*



Pull the lever and move the thigh support forward or back.

Electrical adjustment

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 41 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀



1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

4 Backrest

Lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

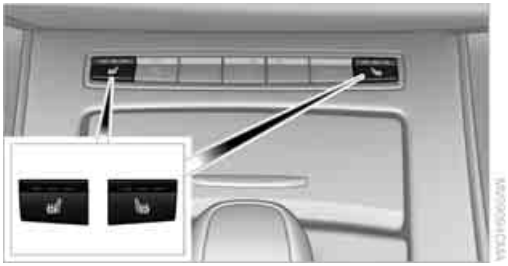
- ▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press the switch at the front or rear, respectively.
- ▷ Shift curvature up or down: press the switch at the top or bottom, respectively.

Backrest width*

You can change the width of the backrest to suit your individual preferences by adjusting the lateral-support pads.

Press the front or rear end of the switch. Backrest width decreases or increases accordingly.

Heated seats*



Press once for each temperature level. Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

To switch off:
Press button longer.

If you continue driving within approx. the next 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.

The temperature is lowered or the heating is switched off entirely to save on battery power. The LEDs stay lit.

Seat and mirror memory*

You can store and call up two different combinations of driver's-seat and exterior-mirror positions.

Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or the ignition, refer to page 50.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to the desired positions.
3. Press the M button.
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**: the LED goes out.

   The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Call-up

Do not call up memory while you are driving, otherwise unexpected seat movement could result in an accident.◀

Convenience mode

1. Unlock and open the driver's door or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 50.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The adjusting procedure is halted immediately when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off, refer to page 50.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and keep it pressed until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed accidentally: Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Call-up with the remote control

The driver's seat position last stored is stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can select whether the seat should be reset to that position.

When this Personal Profile function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is free of obstacles. Failure to do so could result in damage to the objects if the seat were to move rearward.◀

The adjusting procedure is halted immediately when you touch a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position automatic"

Safety belts

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 41 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Closing

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

The upper belt anchor is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is adjusted properly, refer to page 41.

Opening

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

Fasten safety belts reminder for driver and passenger*

The indicator lamp comes on and an acoustic signal sounds. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly.

The 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is issued as long as the driver's safety belt has not been fastened. In some country-specific versions, the 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is also activated at road speeds above approx. 5 mph or 8 km/h if the passenger's safety belt is not fastened, if objects are placed on the passenger seat, or if driver or passenger unfasten their safety belts.

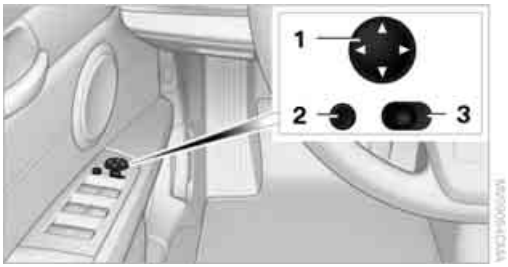
Damage to safety belts

If the safety belts are damaged or stressed in an accident: have the belt system, including any belt tensioners or child-restraint systems, replaced and the belt anchors checked. Have this work done only by your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, it is not guaranteed that the safety devices will function properly.◀

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The passenger's mirror is more convex than the driver's mirror. The objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from traffic behind you on the basis of what you see in the mirror; otherwise there is an increased risk of an accident.◀



1 Adjustments

2 Folding mirrors in and out*

3 Switching to the other mirror or automatic curb monitor*

The setting for the exterior mirrors is stored for the remote control currently in use*. The stored position is called up automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Manual adjustment

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: press the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

At driving speeds up to approx. 20 km/h, you can fold the mirrors in and out by pressing button **2**. This can be beneficial in narrow streets, for example, or for moving mirrors that were folded in by hand back out into their correct positions. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with button **2** to prevent them from being damaged due to the width of the vehicle.◀

CarManuals2.com

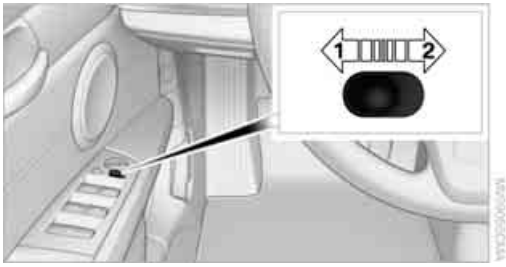
Automatic heating

Depending on the outside temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Passenger-side mirror tilt function – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

1. Push the switch to the position for the driver's-side mirror, arrow **1**.

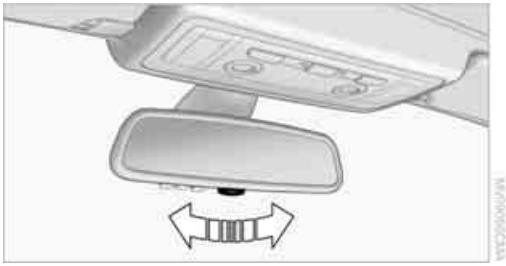


2. Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.
   The glass of the mirror on the passenger side tilts slightly down. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle, e.g. a curb, when backing into a parking space.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the position for the passenger-side mirror, arrow **2**.

Interior rearview mirror



Turn the knob to reduce glare from the headlamps of cars behind you when driving at night.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*

CarManuals2.com

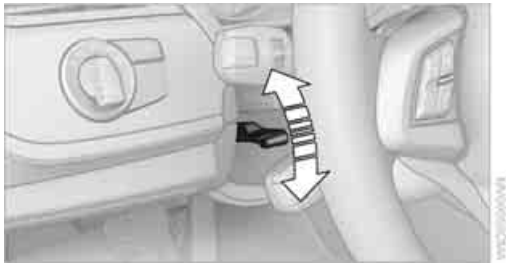
The automatic dimming feature of the interior and exterior mirrors* is controlled by two photo cells in the interior rearview mirror. One photo cell is in the mirror frame, see arrow; the other is on the back of the mirror.

In order to ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the photo cells clean, do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and windshield, and do not affix adhesive labels or stickers of any kind to the windshield directly in front of the mirror.

Steering wheel

Adjustments

Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion, otherwise there is a risk of accident due to an unexpected movement.◀



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Do not use force to swing the lever back up, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Steering wheel heating*

To switch on or off, press the button.

CarManuals2.com

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example.◀

Children on the passenger seat

Always transport children under the age of 13 or smaller than 5 ft/150 cm in a child-restraint system suitable for their age, weight and size, and with the passenger airbag deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident or if the airbags deploy.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must be buckled in with a safety belt as soon as there no longer is any child-restraint system that is appropriate for their age, size and weight.

For more information on automatic deactivation of the passenger airbags refer to page 86.

CarManuals2.com

Installing child-restraint systems

After installing a child-restraint system on the passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the passenger are deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.
Observe the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using child-restraint systems. Otherwise the protective effect may be diminished.◀

Standard child-restraint systems are designed to be secured with a lap belt or with the lap-belt section of a lap-and-shoulder belt. Incorrectly or improperly installed child-restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children. Always follow the installation instructions for the system with the greatest care.

On the passenger seat

After installing a child-restraint system on the passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags for the passenger are deactivated, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.◀

Seat position

Before installing a child-restraint system, move the passenger seat as far back and up* as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt.

Backrest width*

The backrest width of the passenger's seat must be at its widest possible setting. Do not change the setting after installing the child seat. Otherwise the child seat's stability on the passenger's seat is limited.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to its widest setting, refer to page 43.
2. Install the child seat.

Child seat security

The safety belt for the passenger can be locked to prevent it from being pulled out when it is used to secure child-restraint systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

To Locking the safety belt

1. Secure the child-restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull the belt strap all the way out.
3. Allow the belt strap to retract and pull it taut against the child-restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

To Unlocking the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child-restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Driving

Ignition lock

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock

Inserting the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

▷ Radio readiness is switched on. Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Convenient access*

If the car is equipped with convenient access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock under special circumstances, refer to page 35.

Removing the remote control from the ignition lock

Do not forcibly pull the remote control out of the ignition lock as this may cause damage.◀

Before removing the remote control, push it all the way in to release the locking mechanism.

▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on.

Automatic transmission

You can only take out the remote control if transmission position P is engaged: Interlock

Start/stop button

Pressing the start/stop button switches radio readiness or the ignition on or off.

The engine is started when you press the start/stop button and depress the clutch if the car has manual transmission, or the brake if the car has automatic transmission.◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and the outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

CarManuals2.com

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

▷ When the remote control is removed from the ignition lock

▷ In cars with convenient access*, by touching the surface above the door lock, refer to Locking on page 35

Ignition on

All electrical consumers can operate. The odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

When the engine is off, please switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electrical consumers in order to preserve the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps as well as displays in the instrument cluster go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Starting the engine

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, otherwise such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the car with the engine running, place the transmission in neutral or move the selector lever to position P and set the parking brake to prevent the car from moving.◀

ManualsDB.com

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession as well as repeated start attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or incompletely burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

Manual transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with convenient access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 35.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and shift to neutral position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

Automatic transmission

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with convenient access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 35.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Move the selector lever to position P.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Remote control in the ignition lock or, with convenient access, inside the vehicle, refer to page 35.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

The engine starts, regardless of the current selector lever position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Switching off the engine

Always take the remote control with you when you leave the vehicle.
Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, press the start/stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Automatic transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

1. With the car at a standstill, engage transmission position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Parking brake

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake that can be set and released by using a button.
The parking brake is primarily used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

When the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake acts on the rear wheels via an electromechanical mechanism. When the vehicle is rolling or being driven, the parking brake acts on the disc brakes of the front and rear wheels via the hydraulic brake system.

Setting the brake

Pull the button. The parking brake is set.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster and the LED on the button light up red. The parking brake is set.

(P) Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

To set the parking brake, the remote control does not need to be in the ignition lock.

While driving

In the rare case that the parking brake needs to be used while driving, pull the button for a lengthy period:
The vehicle brakes hard while the button is being pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up red, a sound is issued and the brake lamps light up.

(P) Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

As soon as you brake the vehicle almost to a standstill, approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, the parking brake remains set.

Releasing

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The parking brake can only be released while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

With manual transmission

Press the button of the parking brake. Depress the brake and clutch pedals while doing so.

With automatic transmission or 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Press the parking brake button while the brake is depressed or transmission position P is engaged.

Indicator lamps

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, if you leave the vehicle.

Manual transmission

When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear.◀

Reverse gear

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 54.

Vehicle parking

To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select position P and set the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◀

Disengaging the remote control

In order to remove the remote control from the ignition lock, you must first move the selector lever to position P and switch off the engine: interlock. Removing the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 50.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Displays in the instrument cluster

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

Changing selector lever positions

- ▷ With the ignition switched on or the engine running, the selector lever can be moved out of position P
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.

  ⚠ To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, depress the brake until you are ready to start.◀

CarManuals2.com

A lock prevents you from inadvertently engaging selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, fuel consumption is lowest when you are driving in position D.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
The sport program is activated and DS is displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

To deactivate the sport program or manual mode M/S, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting gears via the selector lever

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear. M1 through M6 are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Shifting gears via shift paddles* on the steering wheel

The shift paddles allow you to shift gears without taking your hands off of the steering wheel.

- When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.
- If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

If the selector lever is in the M/S gear plane, manual mode remains active.◀

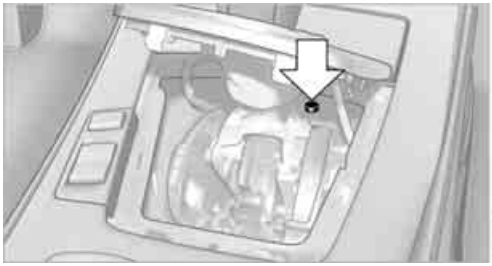
- To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.
- To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The gear selected is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Overriding selector lever lock

Should the selector lever refuse to move out of position P although the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.



3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 208, press the red lever while moving the selector lever to the desired position.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch*

The concept

This transmission is an automated manual transmission with two clutches and two gearbox components in which the gears are changed without loss of torque.

You operate the transmission using the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers the following functions:

- Selection between manual and automatic operation: sequential mode or drive mode
- Automatic downshifting and protection against selecting the wrong gear, even in sequential mode
- Launch Control acceleration assistant, refer to page 58
- Automatic double de-clutch

System limitations

This transmission is equipped with an overheating protection system that protects the clutches against extremely high loads.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The indicator lamp lights up yellow if the transmission becomes too warm. Avoid high engine loads and driving off frequently. If the transmission overheats, the indicator lamp lights up red and power flow to the engine is interrupted. You can only continue driving after the transmission has cooled down.

Avoid driving off frequently with a high acceleration and do not hold the vehicle on inclines by depressing the accelerator lightly and dragging the clutch; otherwise, the transmission may overheat.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + –

Displays in the instrument cluster

CarManuals2.com

P, R, N, D1 to D7, S1 to S7, M1 to M7

The transmission position and the gear currently engaged are displayed.

Engaging a transmission position

- ▷ Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running.
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, depress the brake; otherwise, the transmission will not shift.

Engaging N, D, R

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary. When shifting out of P or into R, press button **1** at the same time.

The engaged transmission position is also displayed on the selector lever.

When you release the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

Engaging P

Press button **P**.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

▷ P engages when you open the driver's door while the engine is running, your safety belt is not fastened and you activate neither the brake pedal nor the accelerator.◀

▷ P is engaged automatically when you switch off the engine, unless N is engaged and the remote control is in the ignition lock, refer to page 50. As soon as you remove the remote control from the ignition lock, P engages regardless of the position of the selector lever.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

You can select this in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

▷ N remains engaged after the engine is switched off if you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. Use this function in an automatic car wash, for example. P is automatically engaged after approx. 30 minutes.◀

D drive mode

In drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Kick-down

To accelerate rapidly, e.g. when passing, press the accelerator down past the resistance point. This provides maximum acceleration.

Sport program and manual operation M/S

Move the selector lever from position D toward the left:
The sport program is activated and S1 through S7 are displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When you press the selector lever forwards or backwards, or when you move the shift paddles, the manual mode is activated and Steptronic changes gear. M1 through M7 are displayed in the instrument cluster.

The transmission assists you in the following situations:

- ▷ Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- ▷ When the vehicle stops, the transmission automatically shifts down to first gear.
- ▷ Shortly before the vehicle slows down to below the minimum speed of the gear currently engaged, the transmission automatically shifts down without requiring your intervention.

Rapid downshifting: In sequential mode, you can skip several gears to achieve optimal acceleration. Do so by pressing the accelerator past the resistance point.

To use the automatic system again, press the selector lever to the right.

Changing gears

Shift up or down using the selector lever or the shift paddles. You do not need to raise your foot from the accelerator when doing so.

Using the selector lever

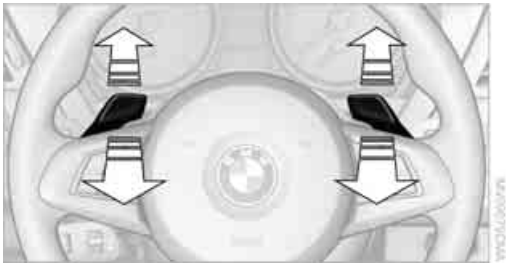
- ▷ To shift up, pull back the selector lever.
- ▷ To shift down, push it forward.

Using the shift paddles on the steering wheel

You can also shift manually using the two shift paddles on the steering wheel. The shift paddles allow you to shift gears without taking your hands off of the steering wheel.

- ▷ When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode.
- ▷ If you do not accelerate or shift gears using the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode if the selector lever is in position D.

CarManuals2.com



▷ To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.

▷ To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Launch Control

Launch Control enables you to drive off with an optimal vehicle acceleration on a high grip road surface.

⚠ Do not use Launch Control too often, as the higher loads on the vehicle lead to premature component wear.◀

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature, i.e. after driving continuously for at least 6 miles/10 km.

1. With the engine running, depress the brake pedal with your left foot.
2. Activate the SPORT+ program of the Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 79.
3. With the vehicle stationary, activate manual mode and select first gear.
4. Press the accelerator all the way down. The engine speed when driving off is controlled. A flag symbol appears in the instrument cluster.
5. The vehicle accelerates when you release the brake pedal. Keep the accelerator pressed all the way down.
6. The transmission shifts up automatically as long as the accelerator is pressed all the way down.

Launch Control only becomes available again after a certain distance has been driven.

CarManuals2.com

Launch Control can only be used after the break-in phase, refer to page 110.

▷ To maintain driving stability, activate DSC whenever possible.◀

Releasing the transmission lock manually

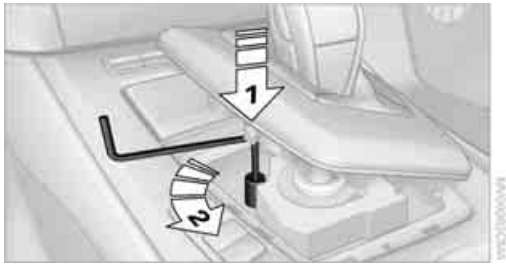
▷ If a power failure occurs, e.g. if the battery is discharged or disconnected or if there is an electrical malfunction, the transmission lock must be released manually; otherwise, the rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed.◀

Release the transmission lock manually for towing only and set the parking brake beforehand to prevent the vehicle from rolling. After parking the vehicle, lock the transmission lock again.

Releasing

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out.

3. Remove the cap using the Allen wrench from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 208.
4. Insert the Allen wrench into the opening, arrow **1**.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

5. Turn the Allen wrench as far as it will go, arrow **2**. The transmission lock is released.

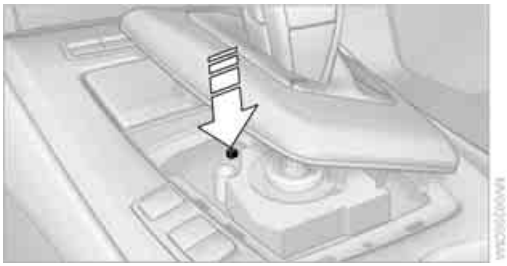
   Do not turn the Allen wrench in the opposite direction as this may damage the mechanism.◀

6. Draw the Allen wrench out of the opening.

After parking the vehicle, lock the transmission lock again. Otherwise, there is a danger of the vehicle rolling.◀

Locking

1. Press the button, see arrow.
   The transmission lock is locked again.



2. Clip the sleeve of the selector lever back in place.
3. Set the parking brake.

Jump-starting and towing, refer to page 214.

CarManuals2.com

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal indicator has failed.◀

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever as far as the resistance point. The turn signals flash once.

You can set whether it should flash once or three times when activated.

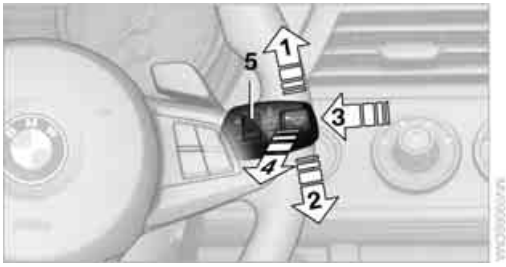
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. **MENU** Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Triple turn signal"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor*
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps
5 Setting speed for intermittent wipe, or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.

The system switches to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

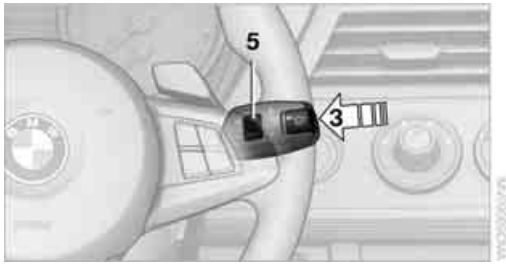
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is a preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Setting speed for intermittent wipe or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn knurled wheel **5** up or down.

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**.
The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor before entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wipers are operated for a short time.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do, your vision could be obscured. Antifreeze should therefore be added to the fluid, refer to Washer fluid.
Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated automatically while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

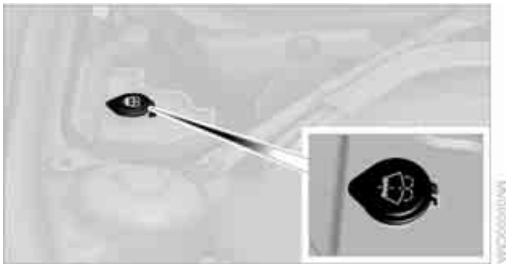
Washer fluid

CarManuals2.com

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from ignition sources and only store it in the closed original container that is kept out of reach of children, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury. Comply with the instructions on the container.◀

Washer fluid filler neck

Only refill washer fluid when the engine is cool to avoid contact with hot engine parts. Otherwise, fluid spills constitute a fire hazard and a risk to personal safety.◀



All washer nozzles are supplied with washer fluid by the same reservoir.

Fill with water and, if required, with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the water and antifreeze before filling the washer fluid reservoir to make sure the correct concentration is maintained.◀

Capacity

Approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Cruise control*

The concept

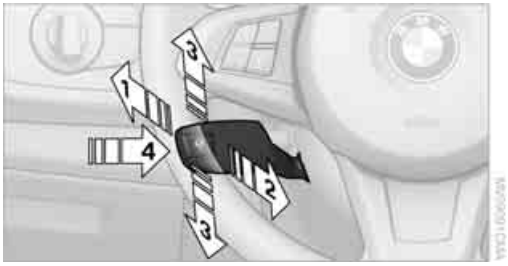
Cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the lever on the steering column. In order to maintain the specified speed, the system brakes the vehicle when the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill gradients.

Do not use cruise control when driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. winding roads, dense traffic, poor visibility or unfavorable road conditions due to, e.g. snow, rain, ice or loose surfaces. Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.◀

Manual transmission

You can shift gears while cruise control is activated. An indicator lamp notifies you that you should shift gears when you drive for an extended period at very high or very low engine speeds, or the system is deactivated.

One lever for all functions



1 Storing and maintaining speed or accelerating

2 Storing and maintaining speed or decelerating

3 Deactivating cruise control

4 Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Maintaining current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or pull it briefly, arrow **2**. The car's current speed is stored and maintained. It is displayed on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

On uphill gradients, it may prove impossible to maintain the set speed if current engine power output is insufficient. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on downhill slopes, the system will brake the vehicle slightly.

Increasing desired speed

Repeatedly press the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Accelerating using the lever

Accelerating slightly:

Press the lever to the resistance point, arrow **1**, and hold until the desired speed is reached.

Accelerating significantly:

Press the lever beyond the resistance point, arrow **1**, and hold until the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores and maintains the speed.

Decreasing speed

Repeatedly pull the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled to the resistance point, the desired speed is decreased by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is reduced by up to 5 mph or 10 km/h until the minimum speed of 20 mph or 30 km/h is achieved.

The system stores and maintains the speed.

Interrupting the system

Tap the lever upwards or downwards, arrow **3**. The displays in the speedometer change color.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ When you brake the vehicle
- ▷ When you switch gears very slowly or shift to neutral in cars with a manual transmission
- ▷ When you engage selector lever position N in cars with an automatic transmission
- ▷ When you engage transmission position N in 7-gear sport automatic transmissions with a dual clutch
- ▷ When you activate the DTC Dynamic Traction Control or deactivate DSC.
- ▷ When DSC or ABS is intervening

Cruise control is not deactivated by depressing the accelerator pedal. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the stored speed is achieved again and maintained.

Warning lamp

The warning lamp comes on, for example, when cruise control has been deactivated as a result of DSC intervention. A message appears on the Control Display.

Deactivating the system

- ▷ Press the lever upward or downward twice, arrow **3.**
- ▷ Switch off the ignition.

The stored speed is cleared.

Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Press the button, arrow **4**. The last stored speed is resumed and maintained.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Displays in the instrument cluster

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

If --- mph or --- km/h temporarily appears in the instrument cluster display, it is possible that the system prerequisites for operation are currently not met.
Calling up Check Control messages, refer to page 74.◀

Malfunction

The warning lamp comes on when the system has failed. A message appears on the Control Display. More information can be found beginning on page 73.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

1 Knob in the instrument cluster
2 Outside temperature display and clock
3 Odometer and trip odometer

Knob in the instrument cluster

▷ To reset the trip odometer while the ignition is switched on

▷ To display the time, outside temperature and odometer briefly while the ignition is switched off

Units of measure

To select the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer as well as °F or °C for the outside temperature, refer to page 68.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, outside temperature display

Setting the time, refer to page 71.

Outside temperature warning

When the displayed temperature sinks to approx. +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is an increased risk of black ice.

⚠ Black ice can also form at temperatures above Select the symbol. +37 °F /+3 °C. You should therefore drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, for example, otherwise there is an increased risk of an accident.◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting trip odometer:
With the ignition switched on, press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is parked

If you still want to view the time, outside temperature and odometer reading briefly after the remote control has been taken out of the ignition lock:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer

Never force the engine speed up into the red warning field, see arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Coolant temperature

A warning lamp will come on if the coolant, and therefore the engine, becomes too hot. In addition, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Check coolant level, refer to page 201.

Engine oil temperature*

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the engine oil temperature is between approx. 210 °F /100 °C and approx. 300 °F / 150 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears on the Control Display.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 14.5 US gallons/ 55 liters.

You can find information on refueling on page 188.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone, a message briefly appears on the Control Display and the cruising range for the remaining amount of fuel is displayed on the computer. Under a cruising range of approx. 30 miles/ 50 km, the message remains in the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in the instrument cluster

Calling up information

Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Current fuel consumption*
- ▷ No information

To set the corresponding units of measure, refer to Units of measure on page 68.

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the last 18 miles/30 km and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

CarManuals2.com

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the trip computer, refer to page 66, you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset average speed: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

With the trip computer, refer to page 66, you can have the average consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the button in the turn indicator lever for approx. 2 seconds.

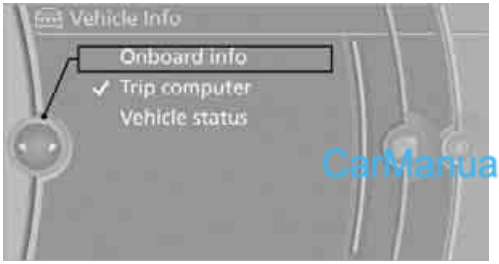
Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Displays on the Control Display

You can also open the computer via iDrive; for operating principle refer to page 16.

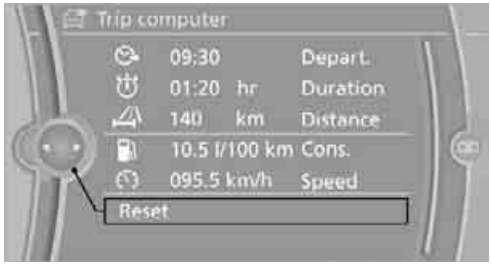
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"



Displays on the "Onboard info":

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Distance from destination
- ▷ Estimated time of arrival if:
  - ▷ A distance was manually entered into the computer, refer to information below.
  - ▷ A destination was entered in the navigation system*, refer to page 119.

Displays on the "Trip computer":



- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Trip duration
- ▷ Trip distance

Both displays show:

- ▷ The average speed and
- ▷ The average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for average speed and average consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. Press the controller again to confirm your selection.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Resetting the trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "trip computer"
3. Select
   - ▷ "Reset": All values are reset.
   - ▷ "Automatically reset": All values are reset approx. 4 hours after the engine is switched off.

Entering a distance manually

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "To dest."

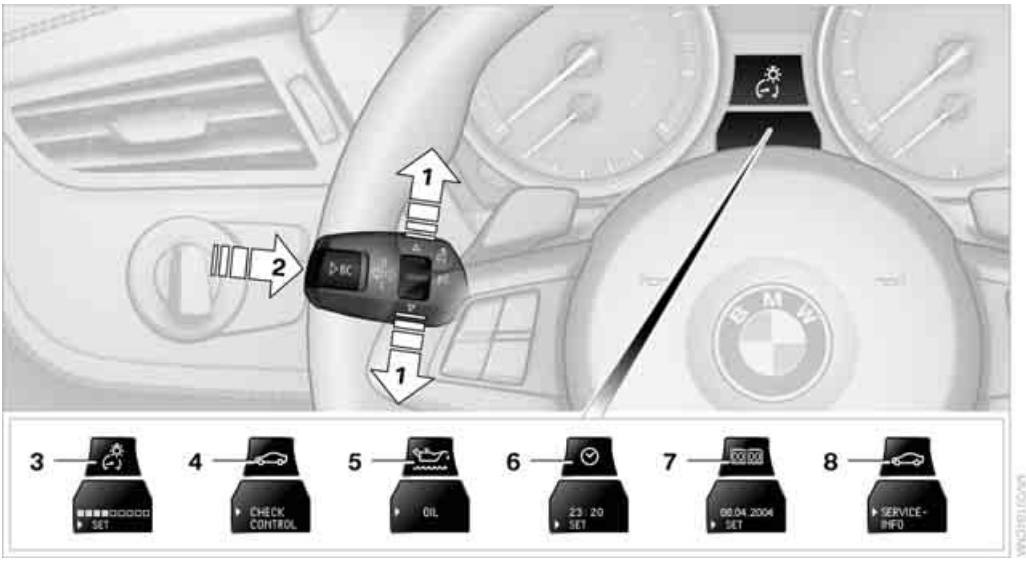
4. Turn the controller until the desired distance is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The distance is automatically entered during destination guidance using the navigation system*.

CarManuals2.com

Settings and information

Operating principle



1 Button for:
- ▷ Selecting display
- ▷ Setting values

CarManuals2.com

2 Button for:
- ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
- ▷ Calling up computer information 65

3 When the lights are on: instrument lighting brightness 90

4 Calling up Check Control 73

5 Checking engine oil level 198

6 Setting the time 71

7 Setting the date 72

8 Viewing service requirement display 69

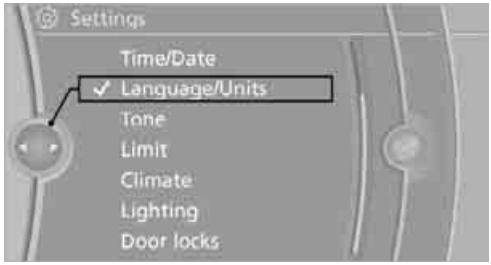
Exiting displays

The outside-temperature reading and the time reappear when you press button **2** or if you make no entries within approx. 15 seconds. If required, complete the current setting first.

Units of measure

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are displayed briefly immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.

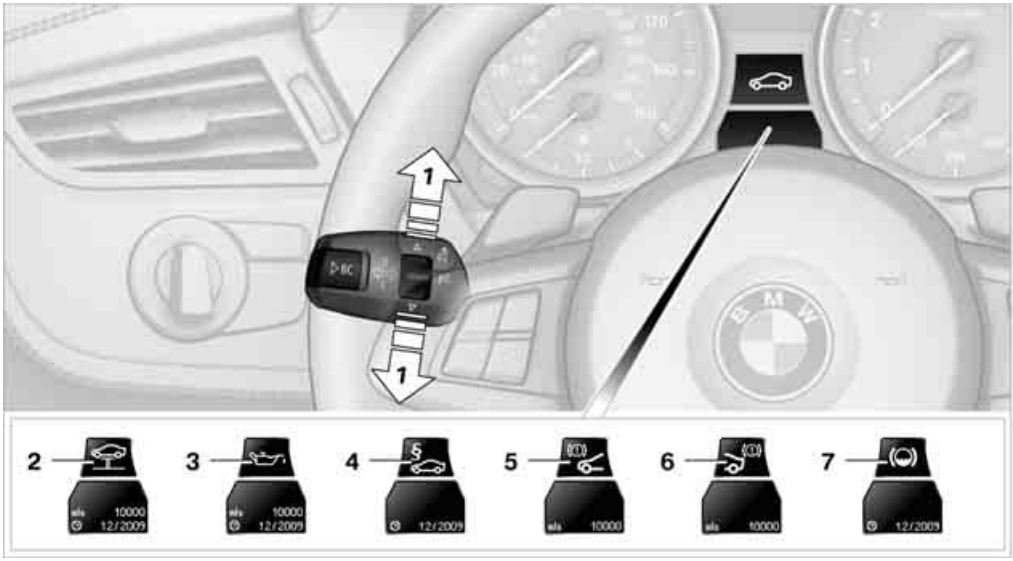
The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your BMW Service Advisor.◀

For certain maintenance operations, you can view the respective distance remaining or due date individually in the instrument cluster.

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 50.
2. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "SERVICE-INFO".
3. Press button **2**.
4. Use button **1** to scroll through the individual service items.

CarManuals2.com

Possible displays



1 Button for selecting functions
2 Service requirements
3 Engine oil
4 Roadworthiness test*
5 Front brake pads
6 Rear brake pads
7 Brake fluid

The sequence of displayed service items may vary. The data for the next service appointment is shown first.

More information

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please schedule a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

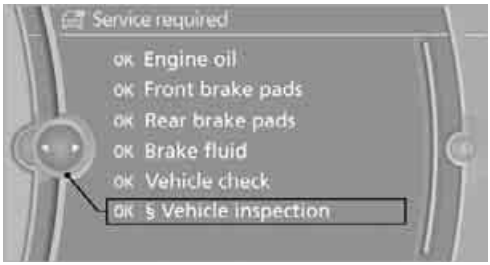
Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 72, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

CarManuals2.com

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"



5. Open the menu for entering the deadline.
6. "Date:/"
7. Create the settings.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.
   The year is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
10. Press the controller to apply the setting.
    The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 202.

Clock

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 28.

Setting the time

In the instrument cluster

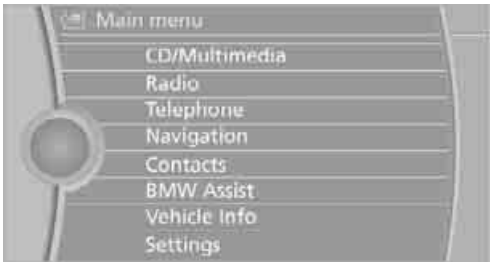
To set the 12h/24h mode, refer to Setting the time format below.

1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the time and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the hours.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Use button **1** to set the minutes.
6. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
7. Press button **2**.
   The system accepts the new time.

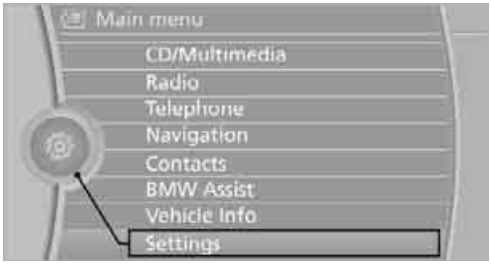
Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. **MENU** Press the button.
   The main menu is displayed.

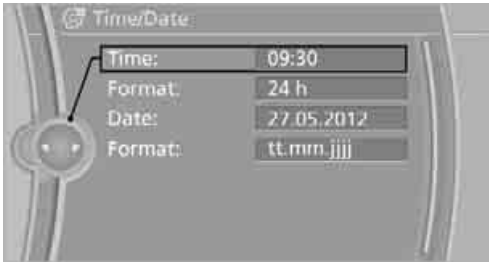


2. "Settings"



Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

CarManuals2.com

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 28.

Setting the date

In the instrument cluster

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.

1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the date and the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.
3. Use button **1** to set the day of the month.
4. Press button **2** to confirm the entry.
5. Set the month and the year in the same way.
6. Press button **2**.
   The system stores the new date.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date://"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored. A Check Control message encompasses indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster and may include an acoustic signal and text messages on the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

Indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

⚠ indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. You can view the Check Control messages whenever it is convenient for you.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

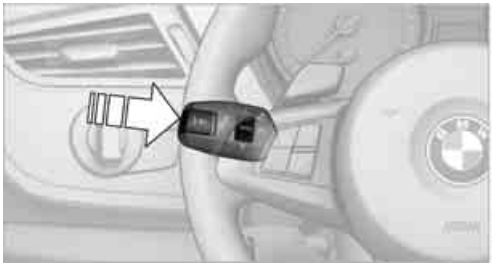
For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond; refer to the information provided below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

To exit the displayed information:
Move the controller to the left.

CarManuals2.com

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button in the turn indicator lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If several malfunctions occur at the same time, they are displayed in succession.

They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but are kept in memory.

They are marked with the symbol shown here.

Viewing stored Check Control messages

1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the words "CHECK CONTROL".
2. Press button **2**.
   "CHECK OK" appears if there are no Check Control messages.
   If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding lamp comes on. It is accompanied by a text message on the Control Display.
3. Press button **1** to check for other messages.
4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. **MENU** Press the button.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"

5. Select the text message.

CarManuals2.com

Speed limit

You can enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are not alerted to having reached this speed again until after your vehicle speed drops below it by at least 3 mph or 5 km/h.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

3. "Limit:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

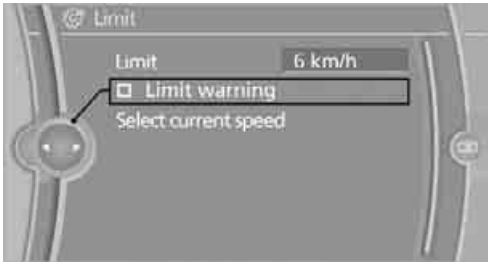
Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Limit warning"



4. Press the controller.

The limit warning is switched on.

Settings on the Control Display

Language on the Control Display

Setting the language

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

4. Select the desired language.

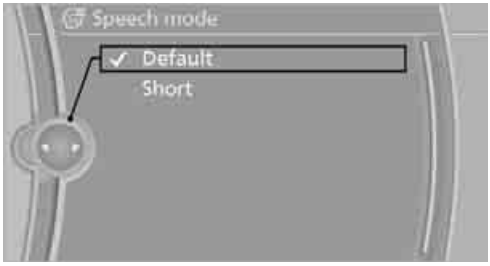
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Setting the speech dialog

Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.



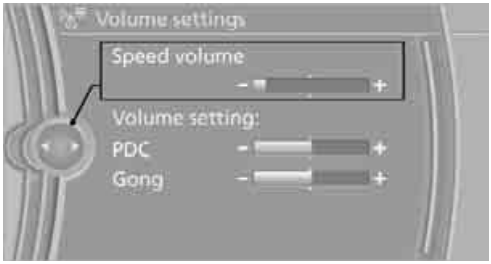
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Volume of the warning signals*

You can raise or lower the volume of the warning signals, e.g. the 'fasten safety belts' reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output. The warning signals have a fixed minimum and maximum volume that cannot be dropped below or exceeded.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"



- ▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control
- ▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g. for the 'fasten safety belts' reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting while the low beams are switched on.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Park Distance Control PDC*

The concep

CarManuals2.com

The PDC assists you with maneuvering in tight parking spaces. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object in front of* or behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in either bumper.

These sensors have a range of approx. 6.5 ft/ 2 m. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 24 in/60 cm from the corner sensors, or approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the center sensors.

PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise physical circumstances may lead to the system warning being issued too late.◀

Switching on automatically

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated after approx. 1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the automatic transmission selector lever to position R. Wait this short period before driving.

Switching off automatically

After approx. 165 ft/50 m of driving or above approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h, the system switches off and the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, its position is indicated correspondingly by an interval tone. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An interval tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that has been detected by only one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you are driving parallel to a wall.

Malfunction

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. PDC is malfunctioning. A message appears on the Control Display. Have the system checked.

To avoid this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. When using a high-pressure cleaner, do not spray the sensors for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm.

PDC with visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limitations

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with trailer towbars and hitches, thin or wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects that have already been displayed, e.g. curbs, can disappear again from the detection area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Therefore, always drive cautiously, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal. Therefore, always drive cautiously, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely, refer to page 112.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Dynamic Brake Control DBC

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full braking application.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

DSC prevents the driving wheels from losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate. The system also recognizes unstable driving conditions, for example if the rear of the car is about to swerve or if momentum is acting at an angle past the front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions at the individual wheels.

⚠ The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin again by taking risks, as this could result in an accident.◀

Deactivating/activating the DSC OFF program

The program can be deactivated via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to DSC OFF.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system and the TRACTION program is a variant of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The system and program can be deactivated/activated via Dynamic Driving Control.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Dynamic Driving Control

The concept

Dynamic Driving Control can be used to adjust the driving dynamics of the vehicle.

Several programs are available for this purpose; they can be activated using the two Dynamic Driving Control buttons.

CarManuals2.com

The following characteristics are adapted, depending on which program was selected:

- ▷ Engine response.
- ▷ Shift times of the automatic transmission*.
- ▷ Power steering support*.
- ▷ Changes in the suspension characteristics through damping control*.
- ▷ Vehicle stabilization through DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

Operating the programs

1 You can activate or deactivate the following programs using this button:
   - ▷ DSC OFF
   - ▷ TRACTION

2 You can activate or deactivate the following programs using this rocker switch:
   - ▷ SPORT+
   - ▷ SPORT
   - ▷ NORMAL

DSC OFF

Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC OFF

Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for the DSC lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The DSC system is switched off.

Deactivating DSC OFF

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

For better control

DSC OFF is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

TRACTION

Maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control is switched on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating TRACTION

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Deactivating TRACTION

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

For better control

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with a tight suspension and limited driving stabilization.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster and the DSC indicator lamp lights up.

For better control

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the suspension for greater driving agility with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating SPORT

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster.

NORMAL

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating NORMAL

Press the button repeatedly until the program display disappears in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

CarManuals2.com

The selected program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Drive-off assistant

The drive-off assistant enables you to drive off smoothly on uphill gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the car in place by depressing the brake.
2. Release the brake and drive off without delay.

The drive-off assistant holds the car in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released. Drive off without delay after releasing the brake. Because the drive-off assistant will not hold the car in place after approx. 2 seconds, the car would otherwise start to roll backwards.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Flat Tire Monitor FTM*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotating speeds of the individual tires while moving.

In the event of pressure loss, the rolling circumference changes and, thus, the rotating speed of the affected wheel. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

The system must be reinitialized each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed.◀

System limitations

The Flat Tire Monitor is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tire damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tires over a lengthy period of time.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- System has not been initialized
- Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- Performance-oriented style of driving: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- Snow chains are attached

Initializing the system

The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.
Do not initialize the system while snow chains are attached.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization using "Reset".
6. Start to drive.

The initialization is completed during the trip.

The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph or 80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h.

   If the car is not equipped with Run-Flat Tires, refer to page 195, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. Otherwise a severe accident could result if you continue driving.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If all four tires are inflated to the correct pressures, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

CarManuals2.com

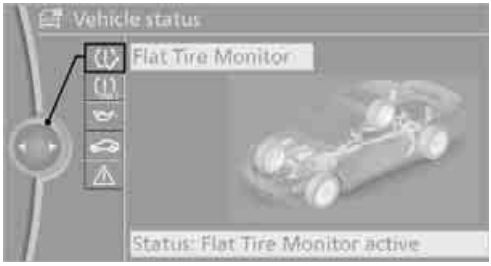
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:
   - With a light load:
     1 person without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     1 person, cargo bay full, or 2 people without luggage:
     approx. 90 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     2 people, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h, otherwise there is a risk of an accident. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Status display

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"



The status is displayed.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

TPM checks the inflation pressures of the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

CarManuals2.com

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset while all tire inflation pressures are correct.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics. Otherwise, the system may malfunction.

Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

System limitations

TPM cannot warn you in advance of sudden severe tire damage caused by outside influences.◀

The system does not work correctly if it has not been reset; for example, a flat tire may be indicated even though the tire inflation pressures are correct.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire if a wheel without TPM electronics, such as a compact spare wheel, has been mounted, or if TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Status indicator on the Control Display

The color of the tires represents the status of the tires and the system.

TPM takes into account that tire pressures change while the vehicle is being driven. The tire pressures do not need to be corrected unless the TPM instructs you to do so by means of color indicators.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Green

The tire inflation pressure corresponds to the established target value.

"TPM active" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel yellow

CarManuals2.com

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a puncture.

Possible reasons for this:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary malfunction caused by systems or devices using the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting the system

▷ Each time a tire inflation pressure has been corrected or a wheel or tire has been changed, reset the system.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. **MENU** Press the button
   The start menu is opened.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Reset TPM"

5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
6. Start the initialization using "Reset TPM".
7. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the reset is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

▷ If a flat tire is detected while the system is resetting and determining the inflation pressures, all tires on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Tire low!" is shown.◀

Message for low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds. There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   ⚠ If the car is not equipped with Run-Flat Tires, refer to page 195, the standard equipment by design, do not continue driving. Otherwise a severe accident could result after a tire puncture if you continue driving.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

2. In the event of complete pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guidelines:
   - ▷ With a light load:
     1 person without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - ▷ With a medium load:
     1 person, cargo bay full, or 2 people without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - ▷ With a full load:
     2 people, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

CarManuals2.com

⚠ Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibration or loud noises occur during the journey, this may be an indication that the damaged tire has finally failed. Reduce your speed and pull over as soon as possible at a suitable location. Otherwise parts of the tire could come loose, resulting in an accident. Do not continue driving. Instead, contact your BMW center.◀

Message for unsuccessful system reset

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message will appear on the Control Display. The system is not reset after a tire has been changed, for example.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system, refer to page 83.

Status display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. **MENU** Press the button
   The start menu is opened.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "TPM"
5. The status is displayed.

Malfunction

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the larger warning lamp comes on in yellow. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in gray and a message appears. No punctures can be detected.

This type of message is shown in the following situations:

- ▷ If there is a malfunction
  Have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheel without TPM electronics has been mounted
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily malfunctioning due to other systems or devices using the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level at which the TPMS low tire pressure telltale illuminates.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously lit. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Servotronic*

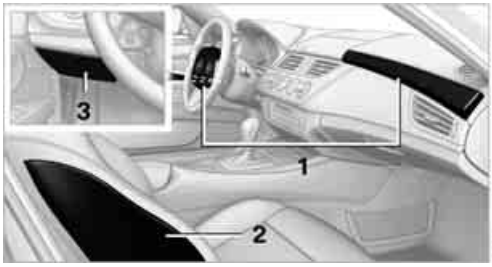
The concept

The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels depending on the speed at which you are driving. When you are driving at low speeds, power steering provides more support, i.e. little effort is needed to turn the wheels. Power steering support lessens as your speed increases.
The system works automatically.

Malfunction

Malfunctions are displayed via Check Control

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Side airbags in the seat backrests

3 Knee airbag

Protective action

Observe the adjustment instructions on page 41 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side airbags help provide protection in the event of a side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the head and the side upper body area.

CarManuals2.com

The airbags have been designed to not be triggered in every collision situation, e.g. not in minor accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way.
Keep the dashboard and window on the passenger side clear, i.e. do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
Do not attach seat covers, cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically approved for seats with integral side airbags. Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Do not attempt to remove the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstered covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and the seats. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to repair procedures of BMW with correspondingly trained personnel and that has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to work on the system could lead to failure in an emergency or to undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the passenger airbags

The system determines whether the passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body. Front, knee and side airbags on the passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

⚠ Make sure that the passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the passenger airbags may not function properly.◀

The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the passenger airbags, deactivated or activated, refer to Status of passenger airbags below.

⚠ Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, read the safety precautions and handling instructions under Transporting children safely, see page 48.

CarManuals2.com

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

The front, knee and side airbags can also be deactivated by adolescents and adults sitting in certain positions; the indicator lamp for the passenger airbags comes on. In such cases, the passenger should change his or her sitting position so that the passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be achieved by changing the sitting position, do not transport the passenger in the vehicle.

To make sure that occupation of the seat cushion can be detected correctly:

- ▷ Do not attach seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items to the passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW.
- ▷ Do not place any items under the seat which could press against the seat from below.◀

Status of passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the passenger airbags shows the functional status of the passenger's front, knee and side airbags in accordance with whether and how the passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child-restraint system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The front, knee and side airbags for the passenger are not activated.

  Most child seats are detected by the system, especially child seats required by the NHTSA at the time of vehicle production.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

After mounting a child seat, ensure that the indicator lamp for the passenger airbag is lit. It indicates that the child seat has been detected and that the passenger airbags are deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not come on as long as a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat.
The front, knee and passenger airbags for the passenger are activated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

As of radio readiness, refer to page 50, the warning lamp comes on briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system malfunction

▷ Warning lamp does not light up at radio readiness or beyond.

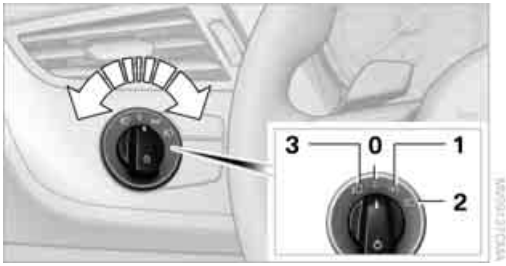
▷ Warning lamp remains permanently on.

⚠ In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay, otherwise there is the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a sufficiently severe accident occurs.◀

CarManuals2.com

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lamps off,
daytime running lamps

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps

2 Low-beam headlamps and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps, welcome lamps and Adaptive Head Light*

When you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3.**

Switch on the parking lamps if necessary, switch position **1**.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

▷ The parking lamps will discharge the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time, otherwise the battery might not have enough power to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the left-hand or right-hand roadside parking lamps, refer to page 90.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control*

When the switch is in position **3**, the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, in twilight, or if there is precipitation. The Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on. You can also activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 89. In the situations described above, the lamps then automatically switch from daytime running lamps to low beams.

The headlamps may also come on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the system cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low-beam headlamps manually under these conditions.◀

CarManuals2.com

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when you park the car, the parking lamps and the interior lamps light up briefly when you unlock the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Welcome lamps are activated and are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the car, with the lights switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time.

You can adjust the operating period or deactivate the function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.:"
4. Set or deactivate the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps

The daytime running lamps light up in switch position **0**, **1** and **3**. They are less powerful than the low beams.

Activating/deactivating the daytime running lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Daytime running lamps are activated and are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 88.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light directs light towards the passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Malfunction

A message appears on the Control Display. Adaptive Head Light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

High beams/roadside parking lamps

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps*

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

There is an additional option of switching on the lamps on the side of the car facing the road when parked.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the pressure point for a longer period, arrow **3**.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time, otherwise the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Press the lever in the opposite direction to the pressure point, arrow **3**.

Instrument lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the parking lamps or the low beams are switched on.

1. Press button **1** up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol appears in the display, accompanied by the brightness setting and scale the word "SET".
2. Press button **2**.

3. Press button **1** up or down to select the desired brightness level.
4. Press button **2**.
   The display again shows the outside temperature and the time.

Interior lamps

The interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps*, cargo bay lamp and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

The LEDs for the courtesy lamps are set in the door handles and illuminate the ground in front of the doors.

To avoid draining the battery, all lamps inside the car are switched off about 8 minutes after the ignition is switched off, refer to Start/stop button on page 50.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

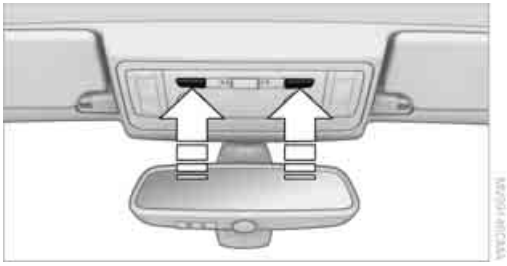
Switching interior lamps on/off manually

CarManuals2.com

Interior lighting*:
To switch on and off, press the button.

To switch off the interior lamps, footwell lamps*, entry lamps* and courtesy lamps* permanently, press the button for the front interior lamps for about 3 seconds.

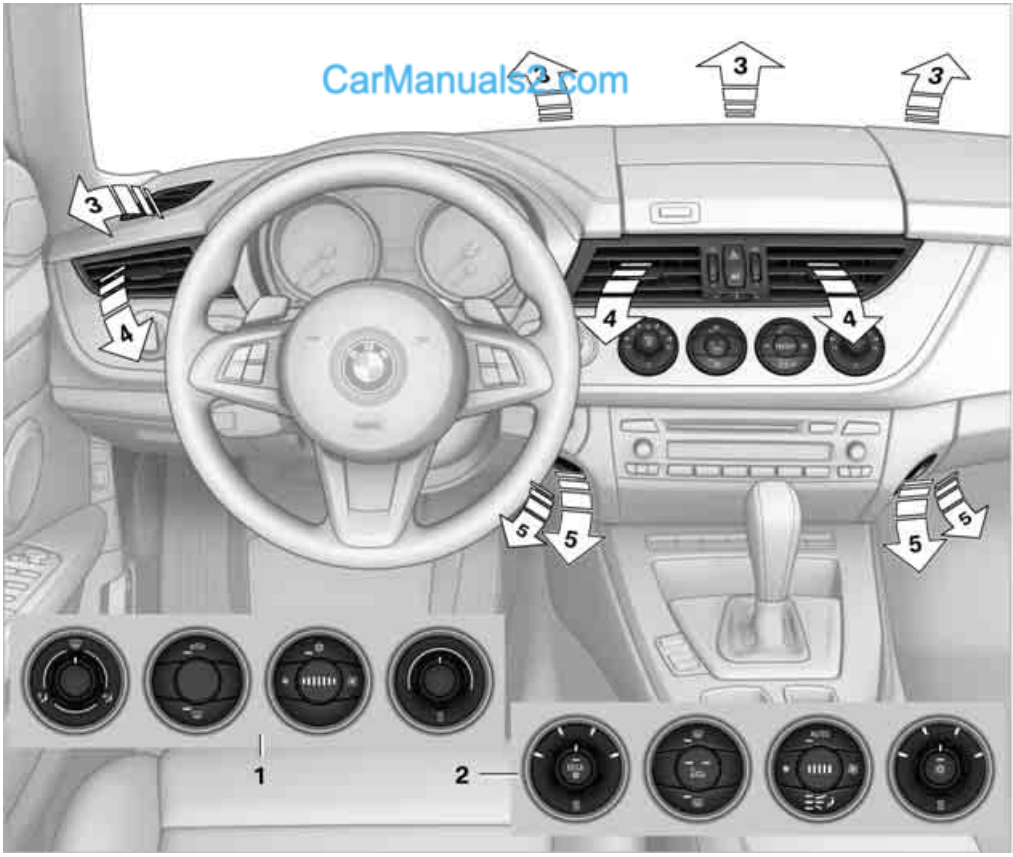
Reading lamps



The reading lamps are located next to the interior lamps. To switch on and off, press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Climate



Equipment versions

Depending on the equipment version, your car has an air conditioner or an automatic climate control system.

1 Air conditioner 93

2 Automatic climate control* 95

Air vents

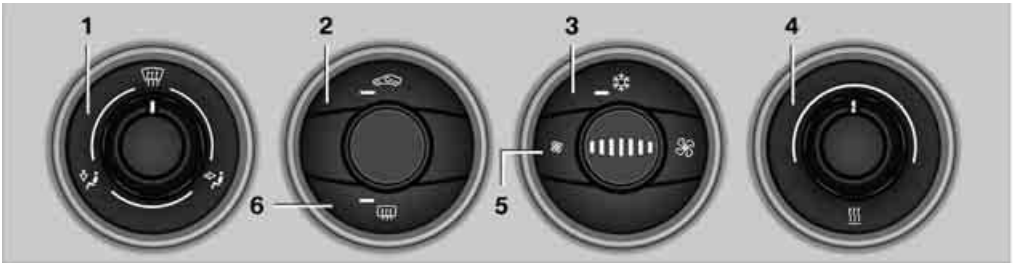
3 Air flow directed toward the windshield and side windows

4 Air to the upper body area.
The knurled wheels open and close the air supply continuously. The levers alter the direction of the air flow. For further details on draft-free ventilation refer to page 97.

5 Air in the knee area, footwell

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Air conditioning system



1 Air distribution
2 Recirculated-air mode
3 Cooling function
4 Temperature
5 Air flow rate
6 Rear window defroster

Air distribution

Direct the flow of air to the windows, to the upper body area or to the knee area and footwell. Intermediate settings are possible. In the 6 o'clock position, a small amount of air is also directed towards the windows in order to keep them from fogging over.

Recirculated-air mode

CarManuals2.com

If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odor or contains pollutants, shut off the supply to the interior of the car temporarily. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

You can also activate/deactivate the recirculated-air mode by means of a button* on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

⚠ If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air flow rate as required.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used continuously for lengthy periods, otherwise the quality of the air inside the car will gradually deteriorate.◀

Air flow rate

Press the corresponding button. The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow rate may be reduced or the blower may be switched off entirely to save on battery power.

Switching the system on/off

With the blower at its lowest setting, press the left side of the button. Thes blower and air conditioner are completely switched off and the air supply is cut off.

To switch on the air conditioner, set the desired air flow rate.

Switching cooling function on/off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available while the engine is running.

The cooling function helps prevent condensation on the windows or removes it quickly.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Rear window defroster

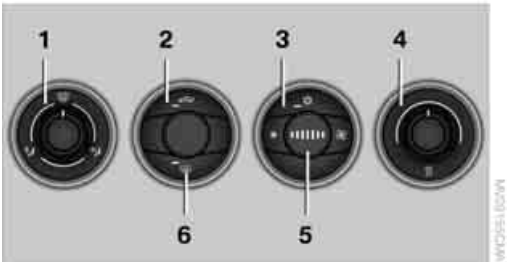
The defroster switches off automatically after a certain time or when the hardtop is opened.

Temperature

To increase the temperature, turn the rotary switch clockwise towards red.

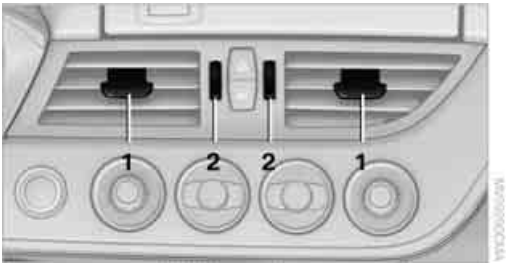
For a lower temperature, turn the rotary switch counterclockwise towards blue.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation



1. Air distribution **1** in position .
2. Deactivate recirculated-air mode **2**.
3. Switch on cooling function **3**.
4. Temperature **4** to the right, red.
5. Set the air flow rate **5** to the maximum level.
6. Switch on rear window defroster **6** to defrost the rear window .

Ventilation



1 Use the lever to change the direction of the air flow

2 Use the knurled wheels to smoothly open and close the air vents

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if it has become too hot in the car.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and not straight at you.

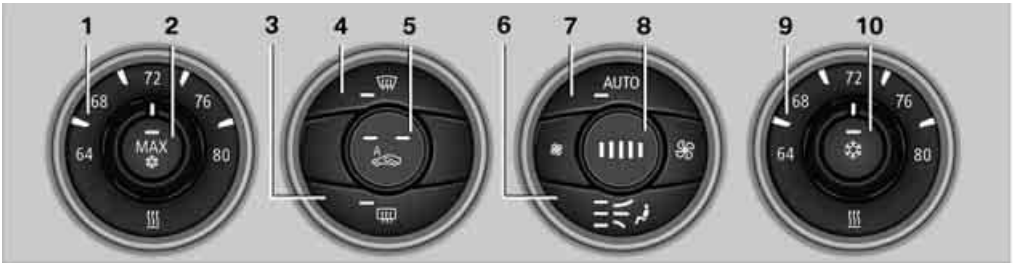
Microfilter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The microfilter is changed by your BMW center during routine maintenance work.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Automatic climate control*



1 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

2 Maximum cooling

3 Rear window defroster

4 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

5 Automatic recirculated-air control AUC/ recirculated-air mode

6 Air distribution, manual

7 AUTO program

8 Air flow rate, manual, climate level

9 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

10 Switching cooling function on/off manually

Comfortable interior climate

AUTO program **7** offers the ideal air distribution and air flow rate for almost all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an interior temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile settings on page 28.

Air distribution, manual

Depending on the selected setting, the air is directed to the windshield, to the upper body area, to the knee area and into the footwell.

Adjusting air distribution manually

Press the button repeatedly until the air distribution is set as required. The corresponding LED lights up.

The manual air distribution is also switched on when the AUTO program is deactivated.

Temperature

Set the desired temperatures individually for the driver's and passenger's sides.

CarManuals2.com

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

▷ To give the automatic climate control enough time to achieve the set temperature, do not switch between different temperature settings in quick succession.◀

You can achieve maximum heating power with the highest setting, regardless of the outside temperature.

The lowest setting effects continuous cooling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Switching the cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available while the engine is running.

CarManuals2.com

The cooling function helps prevent condensation on the windows or removes it quickly.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is automatically switched on along with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximum cooling is achieved most quickly at outside temperatures above 32 °F /0 °C and when the engine is running.

The automatic climate control goes into recirculated-air mode at the lowest temperature. Air flows at maximum rate from the vents for the upper body area. You should therefore open the vents for maximum cooling.

AUTO program

The AUTO program automatically adjusts the air distribution to the windshield and side windows, towards the upper body area, and into the footwell and knee area.
The air flow rate and air distribution, in addition to your temperature specifications, will be adapted to outside influences as a result of seasonal changes, e.g. sunlight or window condensation.

The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

Manual air distribution and air flow rate are activated when the AUTO program is deactivated.

AUTO program climate level

The climate levels can be used to vary the intensity when the AUTO program is switched on. For example, air flow is adjusted automatically to optimize climate control.

When the AUTO program is switched on, you can select the climate level of the AUTO program using the buttons for controlling the manual air flow rate.

The selected climate level is displayed by an LED.

Convertible program

When the hardtop is open, the convertible program is activated as well. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the hardtop open. In addition, the air flow rate is increased as vehicle speed increases.

The effectiveness of the convertible program can be enhanced considerably by installing the wind deflector.◀

Adjusting air flow rate manually

Press the left side of the button to reduce air flow. Press the right side of the button to increase it.

The air flow rate may be reduced to save battery power. The display remains the same.

Switching the system on/off

With the blower at its lowest setting, press the left side of the button to switch off the automatic climate control. All displays are cleared except for the rear window defroster if it is switched on.

Press any button except the rear window defroster to reactivate the automatic climate control.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

This function can be switched on using the right button under the following conditions:

- ▷ Up to 15 minutes after the engine has been switched off
- ▷ Radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ While the engine is at operating temperature
- ▷ As long as battery voltage is sufficient
- ▷ At an outside temperature below 77 °F /25 °C

The middle LED is lit when the function is on.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC/recirculated-air mode

Switch on the desired operating mode by pressing this button repeatedly:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air. If necessary, the system blocks the supply of outside air and recirculates the inside air. As soon as the concentration of pollutants in the outside air has decreased sufficiently, the system automatically switches back to outside air supply.
- ▷ Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

⚠ If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air flow rate as required.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, otherwise the air quality inside the car will deteriorate continuously.◀

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

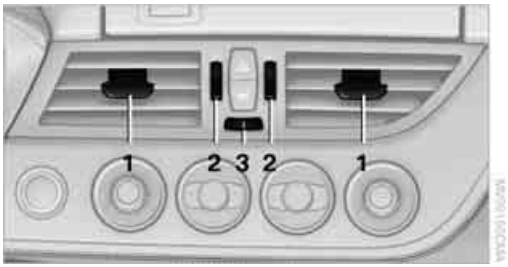
Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.
Switch on the cooling function as well.

CarManuals2.com

Rear window defroster

The defroster switches off automatically after a certain time or when the hardtop is opened.

Ventilation



1 Lever for changing the direction of the air flow.

2 Knurled wheels for opening and closing the air vents.

3 Knurled wheel for adjusting the amount of cool air from the vents to the upper body area. In this way you can optimize the air temperature for the upper body area.

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance if it has become too hot in the car.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and not straight at you.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter during routine maintenance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled devices, such as garage doors and gates or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 99.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the pivoting or travel range of the device being operated. Comply also with the safety instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If this symbol appears on the package or in the instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, you can assume that the radio remote control device will be compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

For additional information, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
You can also obtain information on the Internet at:
www.bmwusa.com or
www.homelink.com.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

CarManuals2.com

Programming

1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 50.
2. When starting operation for the first time: press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly. The three memory buttons are cleared.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device while the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly and then remains lit for about two seconds, the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. If it uses an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the device to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization. When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

CarManuals2.com

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly: all stored programs are deleted.

Reassigning individual programs

1. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 to 12 in/10 to 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit key of the original hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons as soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Digital compass*

1 Adjustment button

2 Display

The display shows you the main or secondary compass direction in which you are driving.

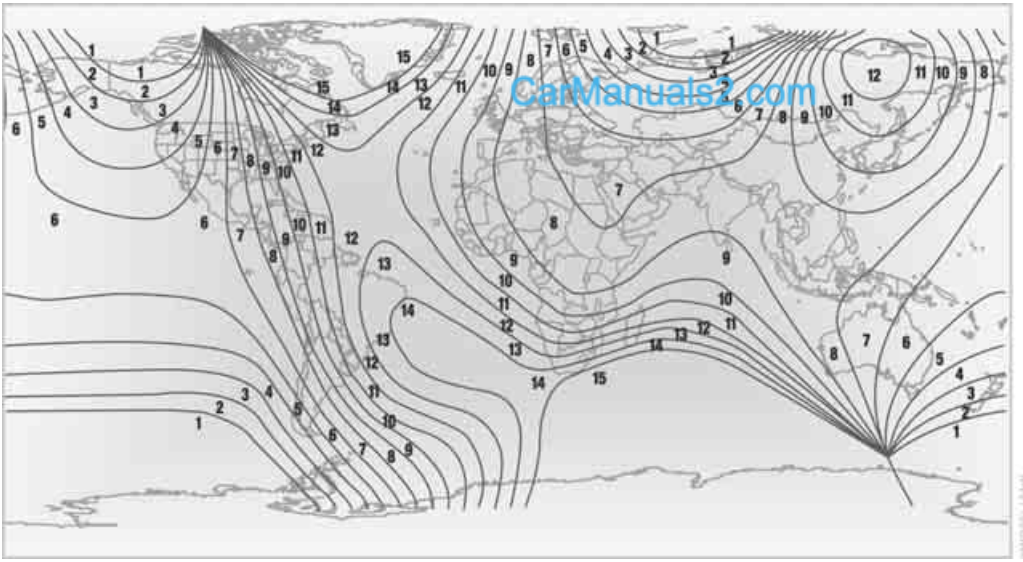
Operating principle

You can call up various functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object such as a pen or similar item. The following adjustment options are displayed one after the other, depending on how long you keep the adjustment button pressed:

- ▷ Press briefly: switch display on/off
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: set the compass zone
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: calibrate the compass
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: set left-hand/right-hand steering
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: Setting the language

Setting compass zones

Set the compass zone corresponding to your vehicle's geographic location so that the compass can function correctly; refer to the world map with compass zones.



To set the compass zone, press the adjustment button for approx. 3-4 seconds. The number of the compass zone set is shown in the display.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjustment button repeatedly until the display shows the number of the compass zone corresponding to your current location.

The compass is operational again after approx. 10 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the following situations:

- ▷ An incorrect compass direction is shown.
- ▷ The compass direction shown does not change although the direction of travel does.
- ▷ Not all compass directions are shown.

CarManuals2.com

Procedure

1. Make sure that no large metal objects or overhead power lines are in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.
2. Set the currently valid compass zone.
3. ensure that the retractable hardtop is fully closed.
4. Press the adjustment button for approx. 6-7 seconds to call up C. Then drive in at least one full circle at a speed of no more than 4 mph or 7 km/h.
   If calibration is successful, the display changes from C to a compass direction.
5. Open the retractable hardtop fully and repeat step 4.

Setting right-hand/left-hand steering

Your digital compass is factory-set to right-hand or left-hand steering, in accordance with your vehicle.

Setting the language

You can set the language of the display:

Press the adjustment button for approx. 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English, "E", and German, "O".

The setting is automatically saved after approx. 10 seconds.

Glove compartment

Opening

Pull the handle, arrow **2**.
The light in the glove compartment comes on.

⚠ To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Fold cover up.

Locking

Lock with a key, arrow **1**.

▷ If you hand out the remote control without the integrated key, such as at a hotel, refer to page 28, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked.

USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g. music collections, refer to page 153.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect a USB hard disk.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

CarManuals2.com

Center armrest

Storage compartment

The center armrest contains either two cup holders, a compartment or the cover for the snap-in adapter*, depending on the equipment version. For more details on this mobile phone cradle, see page 174.

Locking the storage compartment*

When you lock the vehicle from the outside, the storage compartment in the center armrest is locked as well.

Opening

Fold the center armrest up, see arrow.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system:

- ▷ AUX-IN port, refer to page 158
- ▷ USB-audio interface*, refer to page 158

Storage compartments inside the vehicle

The following compartments are available, depending on how your vehicle is equipped:

Compartments* in the doors

To open: fold open the cover.

Compartment* in the center console

There is an open storage compartment in the center console.

Storage compartment* in the partition

To open: pull the handle.

The inserts in the storage compartment can be removed individually.

Removing the storage compartment

The storage compartment can be removed completely to be able to use other inserts, for example.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

In the cargo bay: Press the handle up and fold the storage compartment completely down.

For more information on the various inserts available, contact your BMW center.◀

Lateral storage compartment behind the seats

This space can be used to store briefcases, for example.

When loading the rear storage shelf, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield and the sun visor.

Only transport light and small objects in the lateral storage compartment; otherwise, braking maneuvers and swerving may lead to a safety hazard due to objects flying about the passenger compartment. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo bay if it has been appropriately secured.◀

Cup holders*

Use lightweight and shatterproof containers and do not transport hot beverages, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in the event of the accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cup holders, otherwise damage could result.◀

In the center armrest

The cup holders are located the center console.

Attachable cup holder*

Attaching to the center console

Mount the cup holder onto the center console so that it snaps into place.

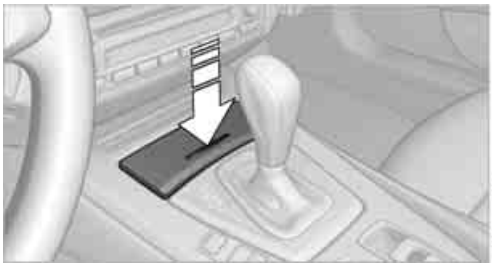
Storing in the glove compartment

Insert the cup holder into the holder in the glove compartment.

CarManuals2.com

Ashtray, front

Opening

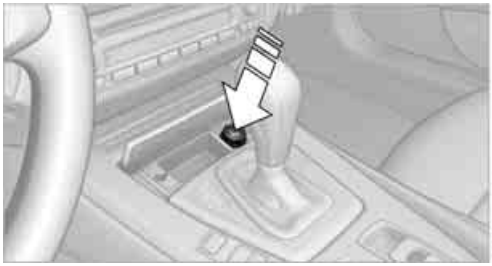


Push the ridge on the cover.

Emptying

Press the cover open beyond the point of resistance, see arrow. The ashtray can now be removed.

Lighter



With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The lighter can be pulled out as soon as it pops back out.

⚠ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.

When leaving the car, always remove the remote control so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

Connecting electrical appliances

Sockets

In your BMW, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as a flashlight, car vacuum cleaner, etc., up to approx. 200 watts at 12 volts, as long as one of the following sockets is available. Avoid damaging the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

Cigarette lighter socket*

To access the socket: take the cigarette lighter out of the socket.

Under the center armrest

External audio device, refer to page 102.

In the passenger footwell*

A socket is located on the left below the glove compartment.

Cargo bay

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following storage spaces can be found in the cargo bay:

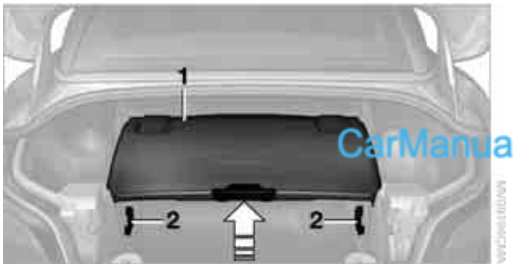
- ▷ Rubber band* for securing light objects
- ▷ Storage compartment

  To open: turn the lock to the left, see arrow, and fold the cover up.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Enlarging the cargo bay



When the hardtop is closed you can enlarge the cargo bay:
To do so, press the cargo bay partition **1** upward.

Before opening the hardtop, pull the cargo bay partition **1** down until it engages in both guides **2**.

Before moving the hardtop, ensure that there are no objects on or next to the cargo bay partition, otherwise parts of the hardtop may be damaged. Do not exceed the maximum loading height; refer to the sticker in the cargo bay showing a line indicating the maximum height. Do not use force to push down the cargo bay partition.◀

The retractable hardtop can only be opened if the cargo bay partition is in its lowermost position and engaged on both sides.◀

Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag*

Always secure transported skis or similar objects with the ski support*; otherwise, they could endanger occupants during braking maneuvers and swerving.◀

The transport bag lets you transport up to two pairs of standard skis safely and cleanly.

The transport bag can hold skis up to a length of 5.4 ft/1.70 m. When transporting skis that are 5.4 ft/1.70 m in length, the overall capacity of the ski bag is reduced as the bag narrows.

Loading

1. Fold the cover down.

2. In the cargo bay: press the tab up and fold the cover down.

3. Undo the fastener and spread out the transport bag between the seats.
4. Insert the latch plate of the retaining strap into the belt buckle under the transport bag.

5. Load the transport bag. The zipper eases access to the stored items.

Only place clean skis in the transport bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the transport bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

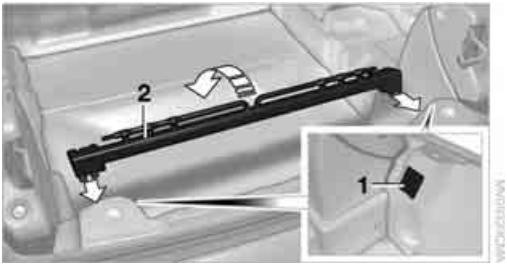
Secure the transport bag in the manner described, otherwise it could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

To store the transport bag, perform the steps described for loading in reverse order.

Ski support*

Always secure transported skis or similar objects with the ski support* as they could otherwise endanger occupants during braking maneuvers and swerving.◀

1. Remove both covers **1** with the screwdriver.



2. Attach the ski support **2** and fold it down, see arrow.
3. Pull the fastener up and attach the rear of the ski.

Before closing the cargo bay, ensure that the luggage compartment lid cannot be damaged by the skis.◀

Removing the transport bag

The transport bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to use other inserts.

In the cargo bay: Press the handle up and fold the transport bag completely down.

For more information on the various inserts available, contact your BMW center.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. Please follow the instructions below in order to achieve the optimal service life and economy of operation for your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4,500 rpm or a road speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Do not drive with full-throttle operation, and do not use the transmission's kick-down mode or Launch Control.

After driving 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Engine and vehicle speeds can be gradually increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive cautiously during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on several factors. You can lower fuel consumption and the environmental impact by taking certain measures, adjusting your driving style and having the vehicle serviced regularly.

Remove any unneeded cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove any mounted parts after you have finished using them

Remove additional mirrors and the luggage rack when they are no longer in use. Mounted parts affect the vehicle's aerodynamics and increase fuel consumption.

Close both windows

An open glass roof or window causes higher air resistance and thus increases fuel consumption.

Check tire inflation pressure regularly

Check the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before embarking on a long journey, and correct it if necessary.

Low tire inflation pressure causes higher rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

Set off immediately

Do not let the engine warm up while the car is still standing, but set off immediately at moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Drive defensively

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking maneuvers. To do so, keep an adequate distance to the forward vehicle. A defensive and smooth driving style keeps fuel consumption down.

Avoid high engine speeds

Only use first gear when setting off. In second and higher gears, accelerate without hesitation or pauses. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and coast to a stop in the highest applicable gear.

On a downhill slope, take your foot off the accelerator and coast in a suitable gear.

CarManuals2.com

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

Switch off the engine during lengthy stops

Switch off the engine when stopping for lengthy periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion. You achieve fuel savings even if standing time is as short as approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off functions you do not need at the moment

Functions such as the air conditioner and the seat or rear window heating draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Especially in city traffic and in stop and go driving they have a considerable impact. Therefore, switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Have the vehicle serviced

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve good economy and a long vehicle life. BMW recommends having the vehicle serviced at a BMW center. Also note the BMW service system, refer to page 202.

General driving notes

Close the luggage compartment lid

Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid is closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle.◀

If the vehicle must be driven with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Close all windows.
2. Greatly increase the air volume of the automatic climate control system, refer to page 96.

Hot exhaust system

In all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated in the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to various sections of the exhaust system, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, with the risk of serious personal injuries and property damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This situation, known as hydroplaning, means that the tire can completely lose contact with the road surface, so that neither the car can be steered nor the brake be properly applied.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The risk of hydroplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tires, refer also to Minimum tread depth on page 194.

Driving through water

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 1 ft/25 cm and at this height no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/ 10 km/h. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Use the parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle for a lengthy period using the clutch; use the parking brake instead. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result.◀

For more information about the drive-off assistant, refer to page 80.

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations in which this is necessary. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors. Full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

CarManuals2.com

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. Downshifting in manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 54.

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch: Never drive with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, engine braking action will not be present or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering.
Manual transmission: Never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, engine braking action will not be present or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering.
Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area around the pedals, otherwise pedal function could be impaired.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When the vehicle is parked

Condensation forms while the automatic climate control is in operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Before driving into a car wash

General information on caring for your BMW can be found on page 204.

With convenient access and automatic transmission

Insert the remote control into the ignition switch.
The engine can be switched off when the selector lever is in position N. Refer also to page 204.

With convenient access and 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Insert the remote control into the ignition switch.
The engine can be switched off when the transmission is in position N. Refer also to page 205.

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This can ultimately result in a sudden blow-out.◀

Make sure that no liquids are spilled or leak from their containers in the cargo bay, as this could result in damage to the vehicle.◀

When storing objects in the rear storage shelf, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield, the sun visor and the headliner.◀

Determining loading limit

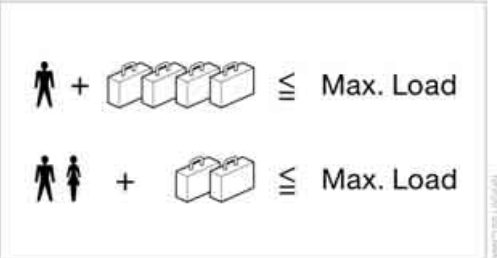
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, overloading can result in damage to the vehicle and unstable driving conditions.◀

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

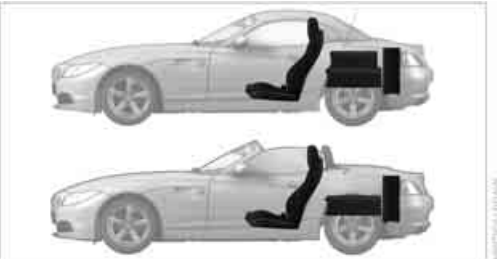
Load



The permissible load is the sum of the occupants' weights and the weight of the cargo. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

▷ Load heavy cargo as far forward as possible, directly behind the cargo bay partition, and as low as possible.



▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

Cargo, securing

Secure smaller and lighter items using retaining straps, a cargo bay net* or draw straps*.

Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes are provided behind the seats for attaching the cargo straps. Adhere to the information included with the cargo straps.

⚠ Always position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or swerving is necessary.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 222, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be thrown around, for example as a result of heavy braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◀

⚠ Before opening the hardtop, fold down the cargo bay partition. Make sure the cargo bay is loaded correctly, otherwise parts of the hardtop can be damaged, refer to page 105.◀

Lashing eyes

Top:

CarManuals2.com

Bottom:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Navigation system*

General information

With the help of satellites, the navigation system is able to ascertain the precise position of the vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

The navigation data is stored in the vehicle and can be updated using navigation DVDs.

Carmanuals2.com

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Updating the navigation data

The navigation data is stored in the vehicle and can be updated using a navigation DVD. Please contact the BMW center if you have any questions.

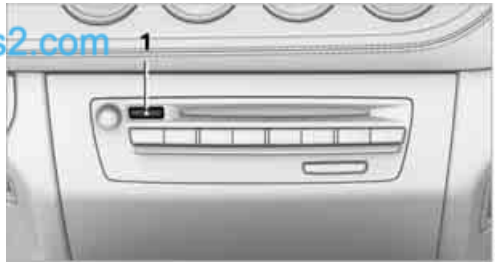
Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

Displaying information on the version

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version".
   Information on the data version is displayed.

Removing navigation DVD



1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected, the drive may be blocked. In this case, a message will appear on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Selecting destination from the address book, refer to page 121
- ▷ Last destinations, refer to Last destinations, page 122
- ▷ Special destinations, refer to page 122
- ▷ Entering a destination on the map, refer to page 124
- ▷ Selecting a home address, refer to page 122
- ▷ Entering a destination by voice commands*, refer to page 125

CarManuals2.com

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 21.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Otherwise, vehicle occupants and other road users may be endangered.◀

Entering a destination manually

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of towns or streets. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"

The system also supports you with the following features:

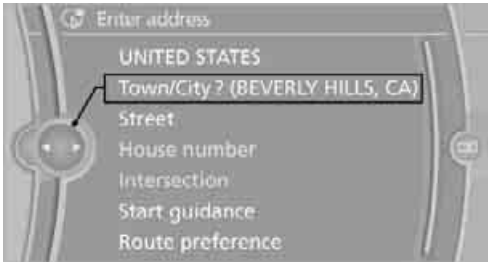
- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of state/province and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city, or select letters.



Delete letters, if necessary:

- ▷ To delete individual letters: Select the |← symbol and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

- ▷ To delete all letters:
  Select the |← symbol and press the controller for a lengthy period.
- ▷ To enter spaces:
  Select the _ symbol.

The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

2. Move the controller to the right.
3. Select the name of the town/city from the list. The three destinations stored last are displayed.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. Select the symbol.
3. Select the digits.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code. A preview map is displayed in the assistance window.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection as you would the town/city.

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

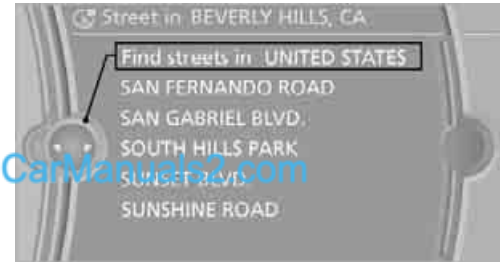
1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the street.

Entering a street without a destination town/city*

You can also enter a street without specifying a town/city. In this case, all streets of the same name in the designated state/province are offered. The corresponding town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can negate this entry. This could be helpful in instances where the desired street does not exist in the entered town/city because it belongs to another suburb, for example.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. "Find streets in" the state/province currently displayed.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street. A preview map is displayed in the assistance window.
9. Select the street.

Entering a house number

You can enter any house number stored in the navigation data for the street.

1. "House number"
2. Select the digits.
3. Change to the list of house numbers.
4. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Selection after destination entry

▷ "Start guidance".
Destination guidance is started immediately.

▷ "Route preference"
refer to page 128.

▷ "Points of Interest at dest."
refer to page 122.

If a new town/city is selected during destination guidance, the current destination guidance is terminated.

Address book

To create contacts, refer to page 176.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts with addresses are displayed.

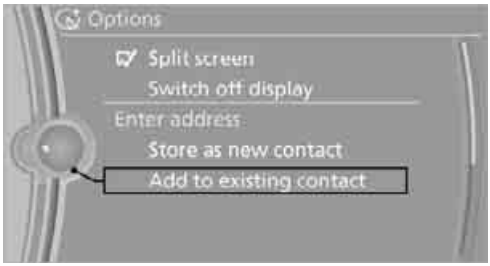
3. Select a contact from the list or, if necessary, using "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" oder "Home address".

Destination guidance is started.

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact"or"Add to existing contact"

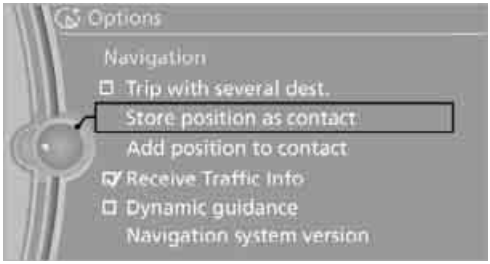


3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact"or"Add position to contact"



4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Editing or deleting an address

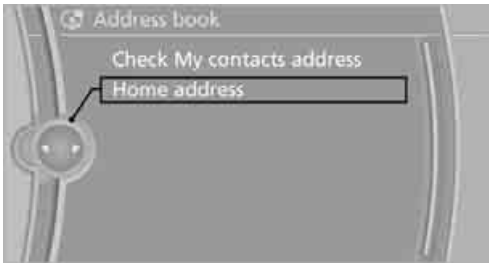
1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

CarManuals2.com

Using home address as destination

The home address must be stored as a destination. Refer to Specifying a contact as the home address, page 176.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home address"



4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Opening the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"

3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

Special destinations

You can search for special destinations, e.g. hotels and places of interest, and start destination guidance to this location.

The search can be narrowed by entering the location and type of special destination.

▷ The scope of information provided depends on the particular set of navigation data you are using.◀

Opening the search for special destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

Special destination location

Search for a special destination according to its location relative to a locality or route.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

1. "Search destination"

2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination:
   - ▷ "At current location"
   - ▷ "At destination"
   - ▷ "At a different destination"
   - ▷ "Along route"

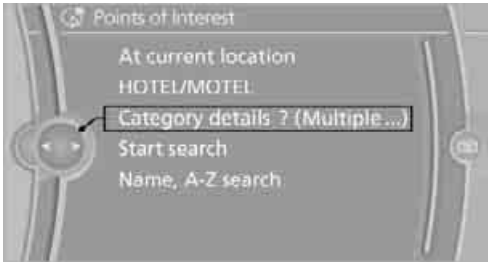
Special destination category

1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or a specific category, e. g. hotels and restaurants.
3. "Route Points of Interest"*

Category details

Additional details can be displayed for some special destinations, e. g. Italian restaurants.

1. "Points of Interest"
2. "Category details"



CarManuals2.com

Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search" after the criteria have been defined.
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
   - ▷ Special destinations "At current location" are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.
   - ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map display as symbols. The display depends on the map scale and the category.
   - ▷ Special destinations "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route" are listed according to their distance from the location where the search is being performed.
3. Highlight the special destination. The destination is displayed in the preview map.
4. Select the special destination.
5. Select the symbol. Destination guidance to the special destination is started. If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Entering special destinations by name

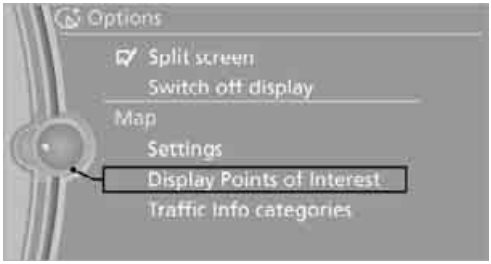
1. "Name, A-Z search"
2. Enter the letters.
   Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.
3. Change to the list of special destinations.
4. Highlight the special destination. The destination is displayed in the preview map.
5. Select the special destination.
6. Select the symbol to start destination guidance.

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"



5. Select the settings.

Entering the destination via the map

If you only know the location of the town or street, you can enter the destination using the map.

Opening the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

A map section is displayed on the Control Display. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. Move the controller to the left.
2. Select the ⊕ symbol. The interactive map is started.

3. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   - ▷ Turn the controller: change the scale.
   - ▷ Move the controller in one direction: move the map.
   - ▷ First move the controller and turn it at the same time: move the map diagonally to select a destination in one of the four regions.
4. Press the controller to display additional menu items:
   - ▷ Select the symbol: start destination guidance.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street or town/city, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:

- ▷ Select the symbol: start destination guidance.
- ▷ "Exit interactive map"
- ▷ "View in northern direction"
- ▷ "Display destination"
  The map section around the destination is displayed.
- ▷ "Display current location"
  The map section around your current location is displayed.
- ▷ "Find points of interest", refer to page 122.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Entering a destination by voice commands*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice activation system. During the destination input, you can switch between voice entry and entry via iDrive at any time. To do so, reactivate the voice activation system if necessary.

CarManuals2.com

You can have the possible commands read aloud via ›Voice commands‹.◀

Entering an address

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for the system to prompt you for a particular part of the address.
4. Say the particular part of the address, e.g. ›State‹
5. Say the name of the destination state/province in the language of the voice activation system.

Entering a town/city

The destination town/city can be spelled or entered as a complete word*.

The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.◀

Spelling the destination

To enter a destination, spell it in the way it is commonly spelled in the destination country. Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses.

1. Spell the town/city:
   Say at least the first three letters of the town/city. The more letters you say, the more accurately the system will recognize the town/city.

The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that meet your entries. Up to 7 entries at a time appear on the Control Display.

The system suggests a location.

2. Select a location:
   - ▷ Select a highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select another town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select an entry, e.g. ›Entry 2‹
   - ▷ Re-enter the town/city: ›New entry‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as a complete word

The names of towns/cities and streets located in the region in which the language of the voice activation system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a U.S. destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, and avoid excessive emphases and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to ask for the town/city of destination.
2. Say the name of the destination town/city.

   The system may suggest multiple destinations that meet your entries.

The system suggests a location.

3. Select a location:
   - ▷ Select a highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select another town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select an entry, e.g. ›Entry 2‹
   - ▷ Enter the town/city by spelling: ›Spell city‹

Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from that list.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination town/city.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number and start destination guidance.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Storing destinations

The destination is added to the destination list and is displayed in the list of last destinations.

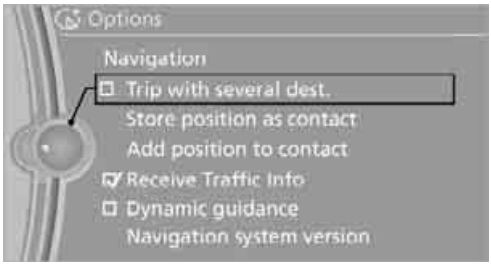
Trip planner

The trip planner can be used to plan a trip with several legs to different destinations.

New trip

Various intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Activate "Trip with several dest.".

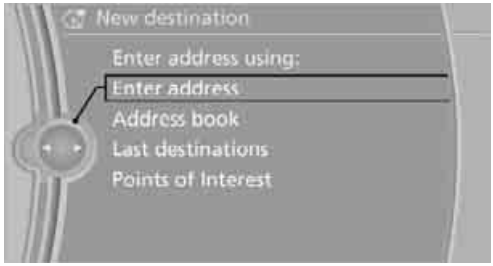


4. "Trip list"
5. "New trip"

Entering intermediate destinations

1. "Enter first dest. in the trip", if necessary "Another destination in the trip"
2. "Enter address using:"
3. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.

CarManuals2.com



4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted: "As first destination", "As last destination" or "Insert within list".
5. Select "Another destination in the trip", if necessary.

Starting the trip

After entering all of the intermediate destinations, open a stored trip directly via "Start guidance" or via "Trip list".

Storing a trip

In the trip planner, created trips can be stored in the trip list.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the letters.

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.This function is not available for imported trips.

1. "Trip list"
2. Select a trip.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Arranging the order of intermediate destinations

This function is not available for imported trips.

1. "Trip entry"
2. Select another intermediate destination, if needed.
3. "Insert within list"
4. Move the intermediate destination to another position in the list.

Deleting an intermediate destination

This function is not available for imported trips.

1. "Trip entry"
2. Select an intermediate destination.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete dest. in the trip"

Deleting a trip

1. "Trip list"
2. Select the desired trip.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete trip" or "Delete all trips".

CarManuals2.com

Opening the trip list

The stored trips are listed in alphabetical order in the trip list.

1. "Trip planner"
2. "Yes"
3. "Trip list"
4. Select a trip.

Terminating trip planning

To return to the direct entry of destinations:

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Deactivate "Trip with several dest.".

Word-matching principle

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of towns or streets. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored in the vehicle as the basis for instant response. The benefits for you include:

▷ Names of towns entered may differ from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

Example:

Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".

▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.

▷ The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored in the vehicle. Thus, entry of erroneous or unregistered names is impossible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

After the route is calculated, the route is displayed in the map on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached at the end of the last trip, the system asks whether it should continue destination guidance.

Select "Resume guidance" or "Stop guidance".

Route criteria

General information

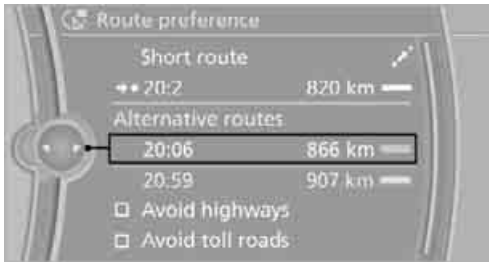
You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like during destination entry or during destination guidance.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:
   - ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, which is a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest roads
   - ▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
   - ▷ "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes



5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
   - ▷ "Avoid toll roads"
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

Dynamic destination guidance

"Dynamic guidance" is switched on:
The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions. The system does not

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

▷ If the "Avoid highways", "Avoid toll roads" or "Avoid ferries" route criteria are selected, route calculation may take considerably longer.◀

Route

General information

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, different views of the route are available during destination guidance.

▷ Map display

▷ Arrow display

▷ Displaying towns/cities and streets along the route

Displaying a list of the streets or towns/cities on the route

When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

▷ Display a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route.

▷ Display the traffic bulletins and the driving distance for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section.

The section is displayed in the preview map.

CarManuals2.com

Bypassing a section of the route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"

4. Turn the controller: enter the desired number.

If the route section should no longer be bypassed: "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendations

The vehicle calculates the range and recommends several gas stations along the route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
4. Select a gas station.
5. Select the symbol to start destination guidance.

Destination guidance through voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol

The voice instructions are switched on.

For rapid access, the feature can be stored on a programmable memory key, refer to page 21.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

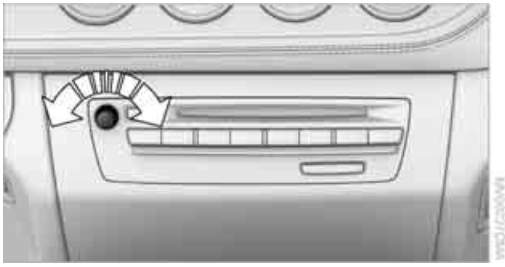
Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol twice.

Adjusting volume for voice instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Have the last voice instruction repeated, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map display

Map display

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The following functions are directly available in the map display:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/stopping destination guidance
	Switching voice instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
	Special destinations
	Display traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
N	Map display
	Changing scale

Information in the map display:

- ▷ Time, entertainment source, sound output, map orientation
- ▷ Distance from destination, estimated time of arrival, if destination guidance is active.
- ▷ Any traffic obstructions are highlighted in color.

Viewing the map

1. Select the N symbol.
2. Select a setting:
- ▷ "View facing north"
- ▷ "View in direction of travel"
- ▷ "Perspective view"
- ▷ "Arrow display"
3. Press the controller.

Changing scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map display facing north, turn the controller in any dsirection until AUTO is displayed as the map scale.
The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Settings for the map display

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
   - ▷ Optimized view "Night mode"
   - ▷ Optimized view with spatial display: "Perspective view in 3D". Prominent areas are shown in the map.
   - ▷ "Traffic Info map"

Split screen settings

The map settings for the split screen can be created separately from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller.
5. Select the settings:
   - ▷ "Arrow display"
   - ▷ "View facing north"
   - ▷ "View in direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective view"
   - ▷ "Position"
   - ▷ "Exit ramp view"
   - ▷ "Traffic Info map"
6. To change the scale:
   - ▷ Move the controller: change the scale.

Traffic bulletins*

You can display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. This information from the traffic information service is continuously updated on the basis of measurement data from traffic control centers and information on traffic congestion.
During destination guidance, traffic bulletins that are relevant to areas along the route are automatically displayed and taken into account in the route planning. You can open all traffic bulletins manually via iDrive.

The traffic bulletins are shown in the map display.

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc
(and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

CarManuals2.com

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. or BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Activating/deactivating reception

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

In many metropolitan areas you can receive traffic information broadcast by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic control centers and the traffic information is updated periodically.
During destination guidance, the traffic bulletins relevant to your planned route are automatically shown. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic bulletins displayed in the map view or in the traffic bulletin list.

Traffic bulletins in a list

A list of the traffic bulletins can be opened via the menu or map display.

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
3. Select a traffic bulletin.

Additional information can be displayed for some traffic bulletins:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Additional information is displayed.

3. To exit from the menu:
   Move the controller to the left.

Traffic bulletins in the map

The map view can be optimized for displaying traffic bulletins.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic Info map": The map is optimized for displaying the traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Symbols in the map display

The appearance of the symbols indicating a traffic obstruction depends on the scale and the position of the traffic obstruction relative to the route.

- ▷ Smaller map scale, e.g. 1 mile/2 km: white sign with the traffic obstruction symbol
- ▷ Larger map scale, e.g. 50 miles/100 km: white sign with an arrow in the relevant direction

Additional information in the traffic bulletin map

When using a smaller map scale, the traffic obstructions are displayed as bars at the edge of the calculated route.

- ▷ Red: traffic congestion
- ▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic
- ▷ Brown: traffic congestion in opposite direction

Filtering of traffic bulletins

You can select which traffic bulletins should be displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired category:

Traffic bulletins of the selected category are displayed.

- ▷ Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- ▷ For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

CarManuals2.com

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic guidance" is selected.

Information on sources of great danger, such as wrong-way drivers, is displayed regardless of the setting.

Traffic obstructions

The system calculates the optimized route, taking into consideration traffic obstructions and road types.

Selecting a detour

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
3. Select the traffic obstruction that is to be taken into consideration.
4. "Detour"

Taking into consideration all traffic obstructions

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
3. Select "Recommended detour".

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- The current position cannot be displayed?
  The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is generally available when you are in the open.
- Destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start destination guidance.
- The destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.
- The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry?
  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during destination guidance?
  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 B

Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD equipment and external audio devices as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

CarManuals2.com

On/off and tone

The following audio and video sources share the same control elements and adjustments:

- Radio
- CD/DVD player
- CD/DVD changer*
- Video
- External devices, e.g. MP3 player

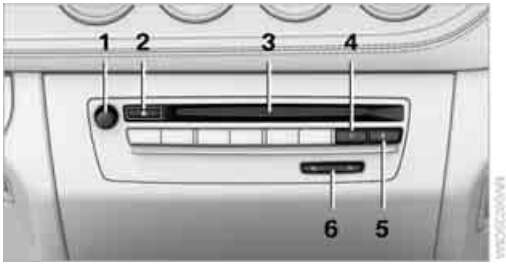
CarManuals2.com

Controls

The audio and video sources can be controlled using the:

- Buttons near the CD/DVD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory keys, refer to page 21
- Voice activation system

Buttons near the CD/DVD player



1 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on the unit, the last set radio station or track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume.

2 Eject CD/DVD

3 CD/DVD drive

4 **FM/AM**: change the radio station wave-band

5 **MODE**: change the audio and video sources

6 Station scan/track search
   - Change radio station.
   - Select track for CD/DVD player and CD/DVD changer.

Switching on/off

In order to switch the entertainment sound output on and off:
Press button **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

The sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition is switched off. For sound output, switch the unit back on.

Adjusting volume

Turn button **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is obtained.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are applied to all audio sources.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

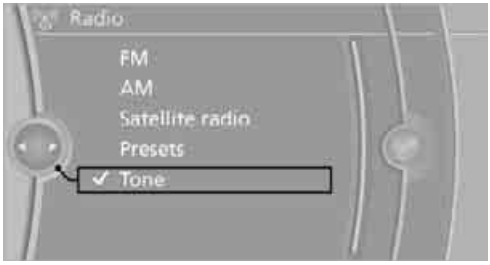
Treble, bass, balance, fader

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

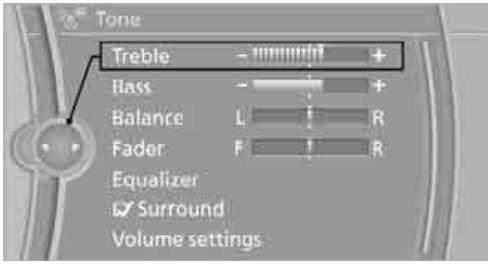
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone setting.

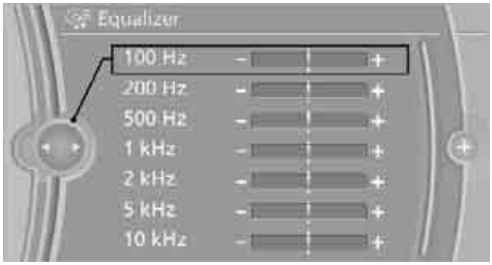


4. To adjust: Turn the controller.
5. To store: Press the controller.

Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.

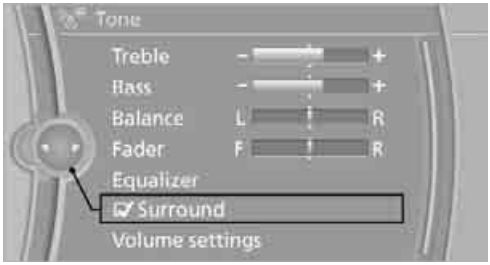


5. To adjust: Turn the controller.
6. To store: Press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround*

You can choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Surround"



Multi-channel playback, surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

Surround is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

Volume

▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.

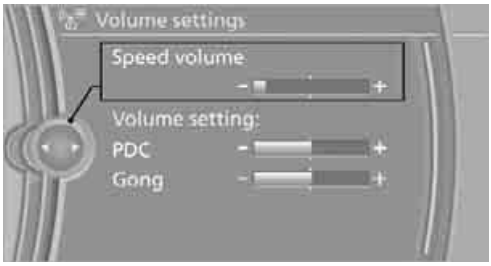
▷ "PDC"*: volume of the PDC signal tone compared to the entertainment sound output.

▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g. for the 'Fasten safety belts' reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output.

CarManuals2.com

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: Turn the controller.
6. To store: Press the controller.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default setting.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

CarManuals2.com

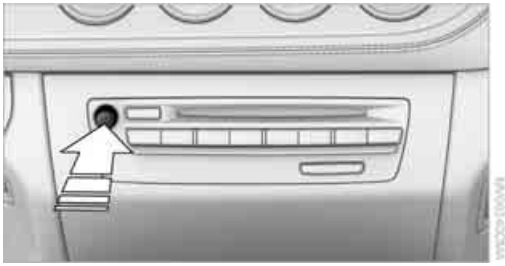
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Radio

Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

- ▷ FM and AM
- ▷ HD radio*
- ▷ Satellite radio*

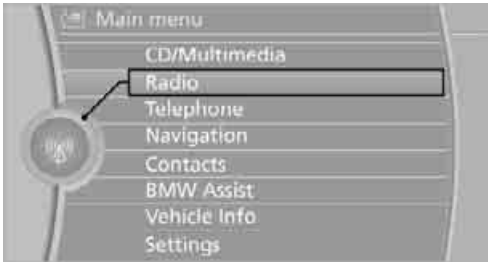
Selecting a station



Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

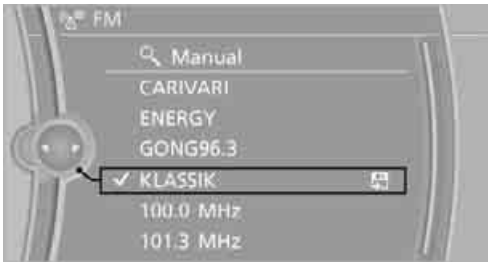
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Radio"



2. "FM"or"AM"

3. Select the desired station.



Changing stations

Turn the controller and press it.

or

Press the button for the corresponding direction.

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Selecting the frequency manually

In "Manual", you can set stations that can be received in addition to those already being displayed.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"or"AM"
3. "Manual"
4. Call up the frequency.

To store the station: Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Storing a station

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"or"AM"
3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the controller again.
5. Select the desired memory location.
   The station is stored.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via programmable memory keys

You can store a station on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 21.

1. Select the desired station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for a longer period.

Radio Data System RDS

On the FM waveband, additional information is broadcast via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. Where reception is poor or in the event of interference, it may take some time before the station names will appear in the display.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"

CarManuals2.com

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD radio*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals. If a digital radio network is available, these stations can be received digitally and thus with better sound quality.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Switching digital radio reception on/off

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"or"AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD radio"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is received digitally.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode,
the playback switches between analog and digital reception. Due to time delayed broadcasting, there may be repetitions or interruptions. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

Presets

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

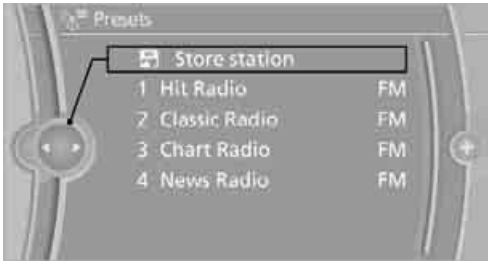
Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Call up the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

You can also store the stations on the programmable memory keys, refer to page 21.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have the corresponding packages enabled.

With this new technology, signal losses can occur from time to time and result in audio interruptions.◀

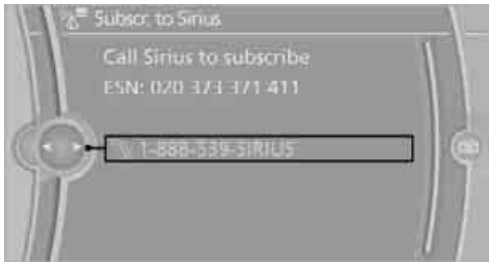
Enabling or disabling channels

Enabling the channels

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Ensure that reception is reliable. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
2. "Radio"
3. "Satellite radio"
4. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

5. Select the channel.
6. If the channel has not yet been enabled, then a phone number and the ESN electronic serial number are displayed.



7. Call the phone number to have the channel enabled.

The channels can be disabled again via this phone number.

Disabling channels

The channels can be disabled by phone. To do so, have the electronic serial number ESN ready.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

4. Open "Options".
5. The electronic serial number is displayed.
6. Call Sirius to have the channel disabled.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Selecting a channel

Selecting a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All Channels" or the desired category.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select the desired channel.

Storing a channel

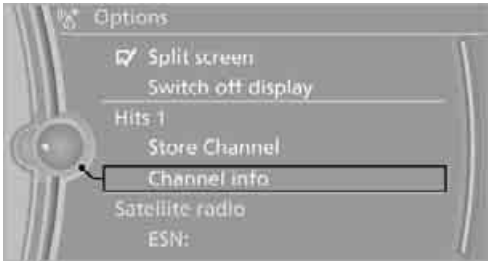
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store Channel"
6. Call up the desired memory location.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed again after a short time.

Displaying information about another channel

Information can be displayed about a track currently being played on another channel.

1. Highlight the channel on which you wish to display information.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Channel info"



Changing the channel using the buttons below the CD/DVD drive

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system switches to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If more than 4 seconds go by and no signal is received, a message appears on the Control Display.

Under some circumstances, e.g. depending on environmental or topographic conditions, it may not be possible to receive a signal. The satellite radio cannot influence this.
A signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to high-rise buildings, in the vicinity of trees, mountains or other strong sources of radio interference.
Reception usually resumes as soon as the signal becomes available again.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CD/DVD player and CD/DVD changer*

CD/DVD playback

Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the printed side up. The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. When playing CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it may take several minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Playable formats

- ▷ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video
- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD
- ▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC

Start playback

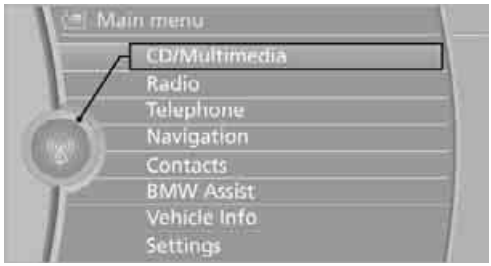
Via iDrive

Fill the CD/DVD changer, refer to page 150.

To start playback if a CD/DVD is already located in the player or changer:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "CD/Multimedia"



2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.

CarManuals2.com

Ejecting a CD/DVD

Press the button next to the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

Symbol	Function
	CD/DVD player
1...6	CD/DVD changer

Audio playback

Selecting a track

Press the button for the appropriate direction as often as necessary until the desired track is reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files*

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.

5. Select a track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track*

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Artist
- ▷ Album title
- ▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
- ▷ Track file name

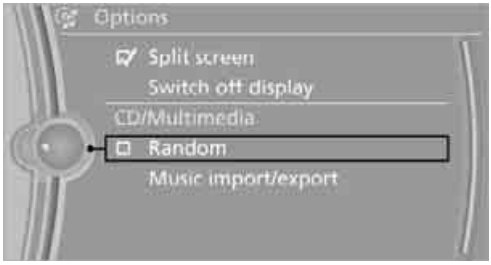
Random play sequence

The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once each in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: the directories and the tracks contained therein are played back in random sequence.

Random mode is switched off if the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Start playback

CarManuals2.com

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to a vehicle speed of approx. 2 mph/ 3 km/h and in some countries only with the parking brake set or the automatic transmission in position P.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. "DVD menu"

5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD with video content.
4. "Select track"

5. Select the desired track.

The CD is started.

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu*
▷	Start playback
❙❙	Pause
□	Stop
▷❙	Next chapter/next track
❙◁	Previous chapter/previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"
   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

▷ To select menu items: move and press the controller.

▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on your DVD.

Language*

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"

4. Select the desired language.

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

Subtitles*

Subtitles can be selected if they are contained on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".

Brightness, contrast, color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

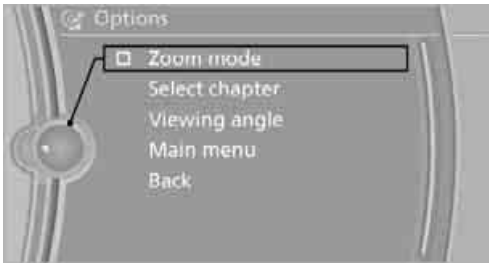
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed and then press the controller.

Zoom

Display the video image on the full screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select chapter"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. ? "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Camera angle*

The camera angle depends on the DVD.

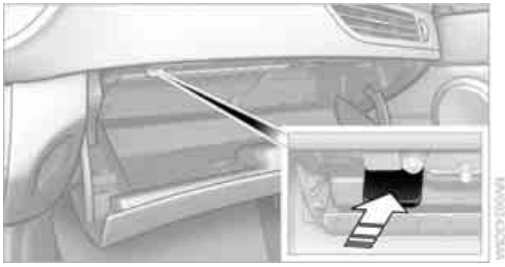
1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD/DVD changer*

The BMW CD/DVD changer for six CDs/DVDs is located in the glove compartment.



Press the lever.

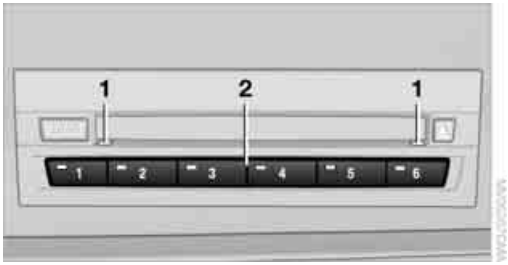
The CD/DVD changer drops down.

To close the CD/DVD changer, fold it back up.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Controls and displays



1 LEDs on the CD/DVD slot flash when a CD/DVD can be inserted.

2 Buttons for the CD/DVD compartments LED lights up when the CD/DVD compartment is filled.

Filling the CD/DVD changer

1. LOAD Press the button.
   The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select a different CD/DVD compartment, if needed:
   1 ... 6 Press the button.
3. When the LEDs **1** on the CD/DVD slot flash, insert a single CD/DVD.
   The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected CD/DVD compartment.

   Do not insert a CD/DVD until the LEDs **1** on the CD/DVD slot flash, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the CD/DVD changer could be damaged.
   Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◀
4. To fill additional CD/DVD compartments: Repeat steps 1 to 3.

Filling empty CD/DVD compartments

1. LOAD Press the button for a longer period.
   The LEDs on the empty CD/DVD compartments flash.
2. When the LEDs **1** on the CD/DVD slot flash, insert a single CD/DVD.
   The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the first empty CD/DVD compartment.

   Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◀
3. Wait until the CD/DVD has been pulled in and the LEDs **1** on the CD/DVD slot flash again.

   Do not insert a CD/DVD until the LEDs **1** on the CD/DVD slot flash, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the CD/DVD changer could be damaged.◀
4. To fill additional CD/DVD compartments: Repeat steps 2 and 3.

Removing the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD changer

1. ▲ Press the button.
2. 1 ... 6 Press a button to select a CD/DVD compartment.
   The CD/DVD is partially ejected from the CD/DVD changer.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

If the CD/DVD is not removed, it is drawn in after approx. 10 seconds.◀

Removing all CDs/DVDs from the CD/DVD changer

1. ▲ Press the button for a longer period.
   One after the other, the CDs/DVDs are partially ejected out of the CD/DVD changer.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Malfunctions

If all LEDs on the CD/DVD changer flash rapidly, the system is malfunctioning.

To correct the malfunction:

1. Press the LOAD or ▲ button.
   The CD/DVD inserted last is ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

If the LEDs stop flashing rapidly, the CD/DVD changer is functional again.

CarManuals2.com

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter can jam and will no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions only occur with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g. inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the top, with a pen designed for this purpose.

CarManuals2.com

Damage

Avoid leaving fingerprints, as well as dust, scratches or moisture on the CDs/DVDs.
Keep CDs/DVDs in protective sleeves or cases.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Storing music

The music tracks from CDs/DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection in the vehicle and played from there.

- ▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format when they are stored. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- ▷ CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: The entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. After storing, the tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Files are only stored in the WMA, MP3, and AAC formats.
  Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored in the vehicle but cannot be played back.

⚠ Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disk.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2008 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright 2000-2008 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: 6.304.523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

CDs/DVDs can only be stored from the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert a CD/DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

The music collection is displayed.
The tracks are stored and played back in sequence out of the music collection.

CarManuals2.com

Observe the following during the storage process:
Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.

▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard disks, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone.

▷ It is only possible to store music from a USB device via the USB interface in the glove compartment.◀

CarManuals2.com

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired category.

5. To select the desired entry:
   - ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.
   - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select additional categories if desired.
   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "Current playback"

2. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

   Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.
4. To select tracks, change directories if needed. To go up one level in the directory, move the controller to the left.

Random play sequence

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".

CarManuals2.com

4. "Random"

Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown it can be changed later if needed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder"or"Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB medium. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Start the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

6. "Music import/export"

CarManuals2.com

7. "Backup music on USB device"

Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing music from the USB medium, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

AUX-IN port

You can connect an external audio device, for instance an MP3 player, and play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system. You can adjust the tone using iDrive.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

To play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to the AUX-IN port.

Starting audio playback

Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track. Operate the system on the audio device.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "AUX (front)"

Adjusting volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "AUX (front)"
3. "Volume"

4. To adjust: Turn the controller.
5. To store: Press the controller.

USB-audio interface*/ additional connection of the music player in the mobile phone*

It is possible to connect external audio devices/ mobile phones. Both types of devices are operated on the iDrive. Sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

CarManuals2.com

Connection options for external devices

- Connection via USB-audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection via snap-in adapter, when equipped with additional connection of music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones, refer to page 174. Playback is only possible if a connector is not inserted in the USB-audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices/mobile phones available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/ mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Ask about suitable audio devices/mobile phones at your BMW center.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

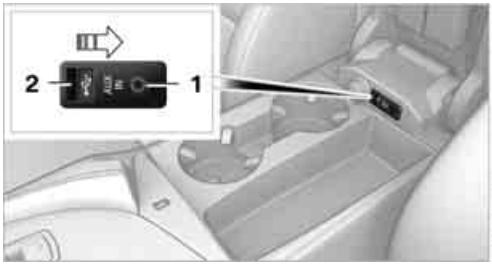
Audio files

Standard audio formats, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, and playlists in the M3U format can be played.

Connecting via USB-audio interface

CarManuals2.com

Lift up the center armrest.



1 AUX-IN connection for audio playback: TRS connector 1/8 in/3.5 mm

2 USB interface

Apple iPod/iPhone

To connect, use the BMW cable adapter for Apple iPod/iPhone. For more information, contact your BMW center or go to the Internet: www.bmw.com

Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone with connectors **1** and **2** using the cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

USB device

To connect the device, use a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

Connect the USB device with connector **2** using the flexible adapter cable.

After the device is connected for the first time, the information on all tracks (e.g. artist, type of music) and the playlists are transferred from the USB device to the vehicle. This procedure may take some time. The duration depends on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Information from up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, or a total of about 16,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

If the audio device has a device name, the name is displayed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.

Playback begins with the first track.

When an Apple iPhone or mobile phone is connected via the snap-in adapter and an audio device is connected to the AUX-IN port at the same time, the audio signal of the AUX-IN port is played.

Information about the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Artist
- Album title
- Number of tracks
- Track file name

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Track search

You can call up the tracks using the playlists and information. With USB devices you can also call up tracks using the file directory.

Selection is possible via:

- ▷ Playback lists, M3U
- ▷ Information: type of music, artist, album, track
- ▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer

Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.
4. Select the desired category, "Genre", "Artist".

All entries are displayed in a list. The "A-Z search" is available depending on the number of entries.

- ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.
- ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

5. Select additional categories if desired.

   The tracks found are listed. Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

Opening playback lists, M3U.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random play sequence

You can play the tracks in the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of a single artist.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. very high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise the audio device may become damaged, which could compromise safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in every case.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Notes on connecting

- The connected audio device is supplied with max. 500 mA current if this is supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.
- Do not forcibly connect the plug to the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB-audio interface.
- Do not connect USB hard disks.
- Do not use the USB-audio interface to charge external devices.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter describes how to use the telephone, BMW Assist and TeleService.

CarManuals2.com

Telephone*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full preparation package mobile phone.After pairing a suitable mobile phone with the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via the iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel or using voice commands*.

Once a mobile phone has been paired with your vehicle, it is automatically recognized as soon as it is inside the vehicle while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. You can store the pairing data for up to four mobile phones simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected at the same time, the mobile phone last paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using the telephone inside the vehicle

Using the snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a holder for mobile phones, allows you to charge the mobile phone's battery and connect the mobile phone to your vehicle's outside antenna. This ensures better network reception and consistent reproduction quality. Please contact your BMW center to find out for which mobile phones there are snap-in adapters available.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

CarManuals2.com

Suitable mobile phones

Please ask your BMW center which mobile phones with Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package and which mobile phones are compatible with the snap-in adapter. By virtue of their particular software versions, these mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual. Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands*, refer to page 172
- ▷ Programmable memory keys, refer to page 21

Avoid operating a mobile phone recognized by the vehicle via the mobile phone's keypad, otherwise malfunctions may result.

Start-up

Pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Compatible mobile phone: The mobile phone is supported by the full preparation package mobile phone. You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

- Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 166, and on the mobile phone.
- Certain presettings may be necessary on some mobile phones: e.g. using the following menu items:
  - Bluetooth switched on
  - Connection must be allowed without requiring further confirmation
  - Reconnection
- Depending on the mobile phone type, the power-saving mode setting, for example, may result in a paired mobile phone not being detected by the vehicle.
- For pairing purposes, define any 4 to 16-digit number as a Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 123. A long and complex number offers the best protection against unauthorized access. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required after pairing has been successful.
- The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Pair the mobile phone with the vehicle only when the car is stationary, to avoid endangering the car's occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

CarManuals2.com

Switching on the ignition

1. Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition without operating the brake or clutch or pressing the start/stop button.

Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

3. "Telephone"
4. "Bluetooth"
5. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

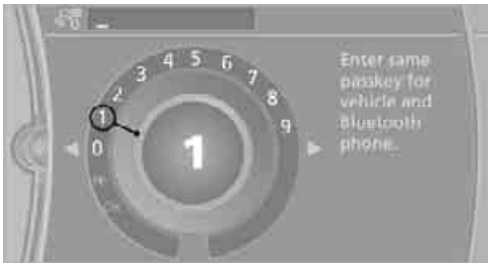
Preparation via the mobile phone

6. Further steps must be carried out with the mobile phone and vary depending on the model. Please refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions, e.g. under the topics of Searching for a Bluetooth device, Linking or Pairing.
   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
7. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Logging in

Depending on your mobile phone, you will see messages, first on the mobile phone display or on the iDrive, requesting you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey previously determined by you.

8. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
   Depending on the mobile phone, you will have approx. 30 seconds to enter your Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and the Control Display.



If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to the vehicle. This data transfer depends on your mobile phone and can take several minutes; please refer to your mobile phone's operating instructions, if necessary.

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone, if necessary.
- ▷ Phone book entries with special characters may not be displayed.

Checks to perform if pairing is unsuccessful

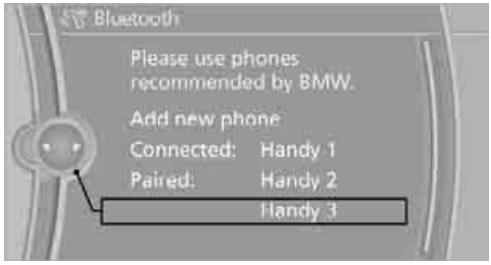
- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? You can obtain information on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered on the mobile phone's display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Did it take you more than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Only a limited number of devices can be connected with the mobile phone. If necessary, delete connections with other devices.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone no longer responding? Switch the mobile phone off and on or briefly disconnect the power supply.

CarManuals2.com

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Select the desired mobile phone.



Unpairing the mobile phone from the vehicle

1. Switch off the mobile phone.
2. "Telephone"
3. "Bluetooth"
4. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Remove phone from list"

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are deleted as well.

Activating/deactivating the Bluetooth link

▷ The use of Bluetooth technology is not permitted in all countries. Observe all applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone, if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you can no longer operate the mobile phone via the vehicle, and other devices with a Bluetooth interface

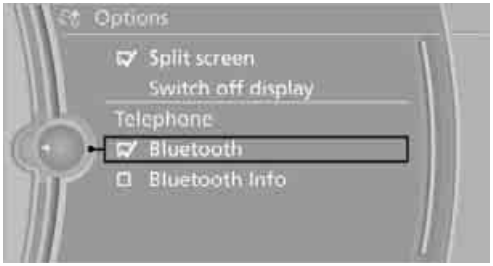
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

can be used in combination with the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop.◀

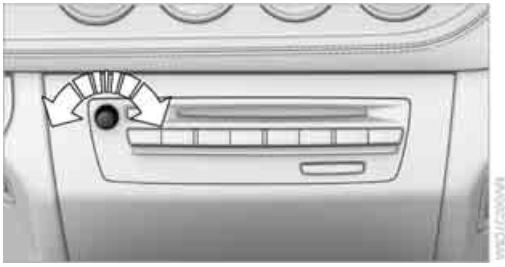
To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Bluetooth"



Adjusting volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions using iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/rejecting calls
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Selecting phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Selecting stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of received calls
- ▷ Ending calls

CarManuals2.com

When the ignition is switched off or in radio readiness, e.g. after taking the remote control out of the ignition switch, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for several minutes.

Voice quality

If the person you are talking to is having difficulties understanding you, this may be due to excessive background noise. The full preparation package mobile phone can compensate for these noises to a certain extent. To optimize voice quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noise, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing air flow from the automatic climate control or pointing the open front air vents downward
- ▷ Reduce the volume of the hands-free system

Requirements

- ▷ The mobile phone's pairing data are stored by the vehicle and the mobile phone is operational.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is recognized by the vehicle.

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

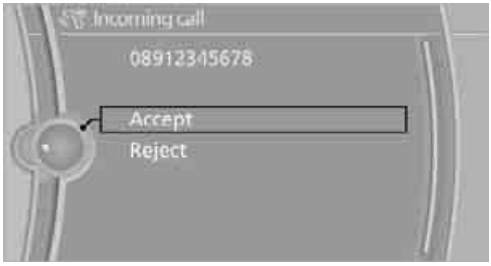
Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

or

"Accept"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG



Rejecting a call

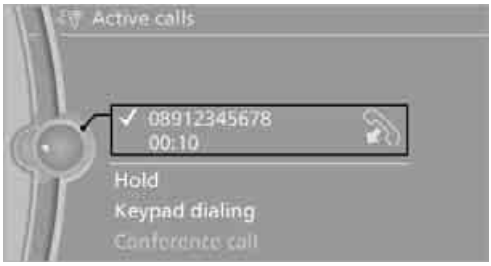
"Reject"
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending calls

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.



Dialing phone numbers

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select this symbol to establish the connection

or:
Press the button on the steering wheel.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are talking to, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your provider.

Calls with multiple parties

You can switch between calls and connect two calls to a single conference call. This function must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may need to be enabled by the service provider and the mobile phone may have to be set up accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an active call, you will hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

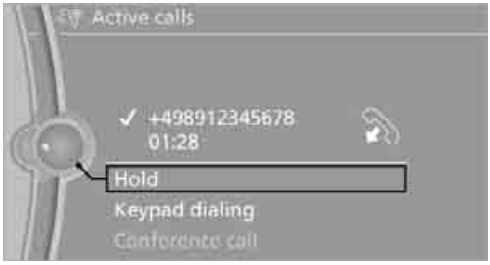
Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

3. "Hold"



The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, toggling

▷ Active call: indicated by a red handset

▷ Call on hold: indicated by a green handset

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

CarManuals2.com

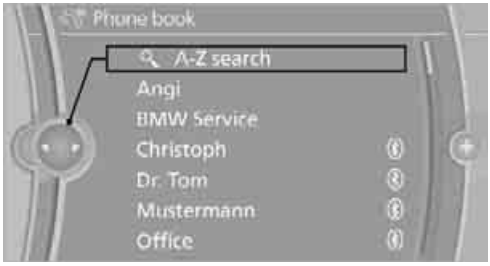
When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended.

Phone book

The phone book accesses the contacts* and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
   A connection is established immediately if calling contacts with one phone number.

   For contacts with several phone numbers:
2. Select the desired phone number.
   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

The entries in the contacts can be changed. When a contact from the mobile phone is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

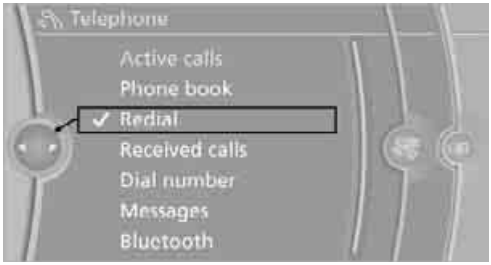
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Redialing

The eight phone numbers dialed last are stored.

Dialing the number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"



3. Select the desired entry.
   The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry"or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact"or"Add to existing contact"
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business" or "Mobile"
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Received calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"

CarManuals2.com

Dialing a number

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry"or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact"or"Add to existing contact"
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business" or "Mobile"
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Messages

Different types of messages can be displayed:

- ▷ SMS
  Whether or not SMS are displayed depends on whether transmission from the mobile phone to the vehicle is supported. SMS may not be supported by the service provider, or the function may need to be enabled separately.
- ▷ My Info messages from the BMW Assist portal.
- ▷ Messages from BMW Concierge

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"

A symbol identifies the type of message.

3. Select the desired message.

SMS

Calling the sender of an SMS:

1. Select the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Call sender"

Saving the sender in the contacts:

1. Select the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact"or"Add to existing contact"

My Info

Replying:

Send a predefined reply.

1. Select the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Answer"

Starting destination guidance:

1. Select the message that contains the desired destination.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Start guidance"or"Insert as dest. in the trip"

Dialing the number in the message:

1. Select the message that contains the desired number.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Call"

Messages from the concierge service

Using the address in destination guidance*:

CarManuals2.com

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance"or"Insert as dest. in the trip"

3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

Dialing a phone number:

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

Saving an address:

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting a message:

1. Select the message to be deleted.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message"

Switching between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue ongoing calls outside of the vehicle's Bluetooth range via the hands-free system as long as the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches to hands-free mode.

With mobile phones that do not automatically switch to hands-free mode:

Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may be possible to continue the conversation via the hands-free system. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

If you are making a call via the hands-free system, it may be possible to continue the call via the mobile phone, depending on your mobile phone model. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

Alternatively, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link.

Depending on the type of mobile phone you are using, it may occur that calls are switched from the hands-free system to the mobile phone if reception of the wireless network is poor.

Operation by voice commands*

The concept

CarManuals2.com

You can operate your mobile phone without having to take a hand off the steering wheel. During your entries, you will be guided in many cases by announcements or questions.

The same prerequisites apply as for operation via iDrive, refer to page 167.

Example: dialing phone numbers

Start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	Voice control response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on your equipment version: ››123 456 7890. Continue ?‹‹
›Dialing‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Saying commands

Activating the system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   A sound signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice commands

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text, e.g. a name, rather than a command is spoken, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having the possible commands read aloud

The system recognizes specific commands that must be pronounced exactly word for word. You can have the possible commands for any function read aloud to you:

›Voice commands‹.

Using alternative commands

Often there is more than a single command to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial number‹ or ›Name‹.

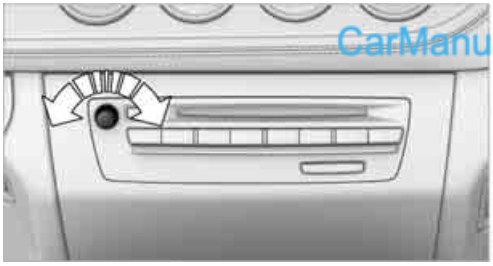
Digits from zero to nine are recognized.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Adjusting the volume of the instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the button during an instruction.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dialing‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone numbers

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone numbers

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Voice phone book*

A separate voice phone book is needed for operation using voice commands.

The entries must be entered using voice commands and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. In this case, phone numbers stored on the mobile phone cannot be called up or saved there using voice commands. Up to 50 entries can be set up. An entry always consists of a name and a phone number.

Creating and editing a voice phone book*

To store an entry:

An entry always consists of a name and a phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name.
   Saying the name for the voice phone book should not take longer than approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. To save the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

To delete an entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry opens.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

To delete all entries:

›Delete phonebook‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phonebook‹.
   The dialog for deleting the phone book opens.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

To read and dial entries:

You can have all entries in your voice phone book read aloud in the order in which they were entered and select a specific entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading the phone book opens.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for dialing an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

To redial the phone number dialed last:

›Redial‹

Notes

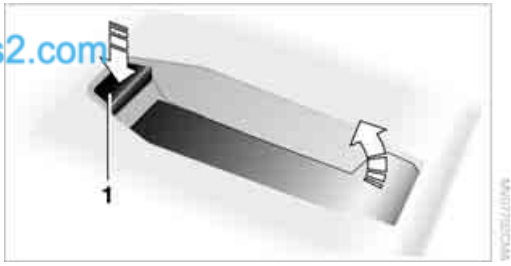
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

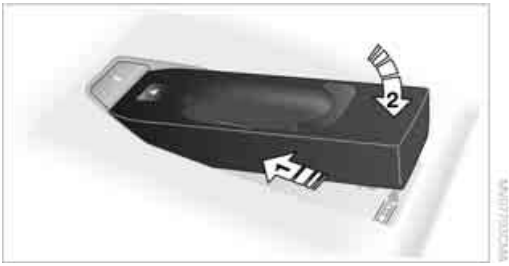
- Pronounce the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass roof closed to prevent interference from outside noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Inserting/removing the snap-in adapter

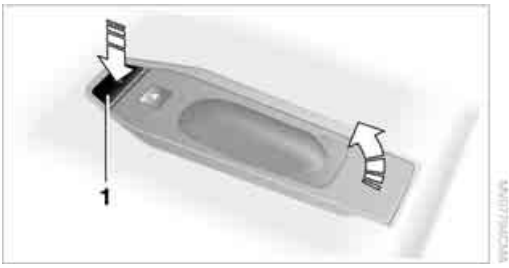
1. Press button **1** and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press it downward until it engages.



To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press button **1**.

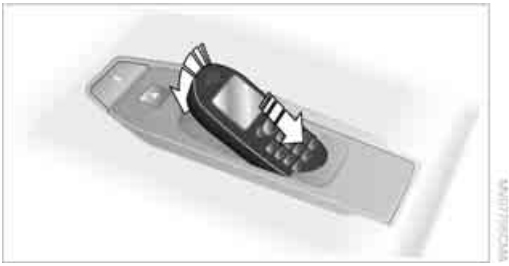


Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Inserting mobile phone

1. If applicable, remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. With its buttons facing upward, slide the mobile phone up towards the electrical contact points and press it downward until it engages.

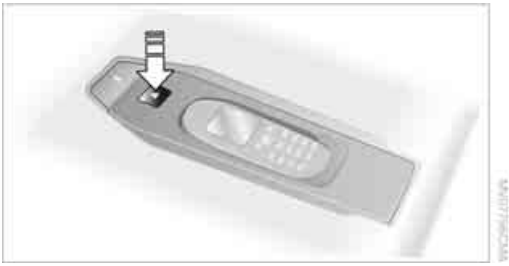
CarManuals2.com



The mobile phone's battery is charged as soon as the vehicle is in radio readiness or the steering is unlocked.

▷ To conserve battery power, you should avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Contacts

You can create and edit contacts. The contacts of the mobile phone * are also displayed. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

CarManuals2.com

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. If the entry fields are still filled with previous entries, select "Delete input fields".
4. To fill in the entry fields:
   Select the symbol next to the entry field.

5. Enter the text.

   If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, it is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.◀
6. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as a home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"
3. Fill in the entry fields.
   Select the symbol next to the entry field.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store as home address"

If the home address is deleted, only the content of the home address entry is deleted and not the entry itself.

My contacts

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and on the mobile phone*.

Displaying contacts

"My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z

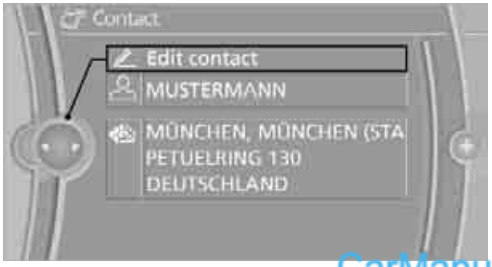
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

search is offered. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone*

Displaying the detailed view

Select the desired contact.
All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.



CarManuals2.com

Selecting a contact as the navigation destination

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

Contacts from the mobile phone may contain addresses that do not match the navigation data contained in the vehicle and thus cannot be used for destination guidance. In this case: Manually correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. An address that is stored on the mobile phone can be matched to the navigation data.

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

After an address has been corrected, the contact can be stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

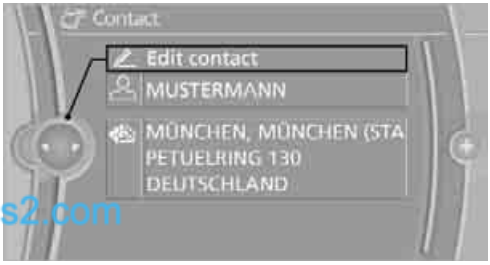
Dialing phone numbers

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"



4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact "or" Delete all contacts"

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides a number of different services. For example, the position data of the vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center when an Emergency Request* is sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the contract individually agreed upon.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Requirements

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. The service must have been fully enabled.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.

CarManuals2.com

Services offered

- ▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this call.
- ▷ Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- ▷ TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- ▷ Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report that your vehicle was stolen to the police, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- ▷ In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers a concierge service and information for route planning, traffic and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling, for example, if the mobile phone is not available or discharged.
  Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.
- ▷ You can also access the BMW Assist concierge service via the Internet.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

TeleService*

TeleService supports communication with your BMW center.

- ▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the BMW center. In this way, the BMW center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.
- ▷ In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ The offer varies by country.
- ▷ Connection costs may ensue.
- ▷ Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
- ▷ Wireless reception is available.
- ▷ The engine is running.

Concierge service*

When you call the BMW Assist Concierge, you can obtain information about, for example, restaurants, emergency pharmacy services, gas stations or hotels, as well as receive the corresponding telephone numbers and addresses.

You can then dial a phone number directly or use an address for destination guidance*.

Starting the concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to the BMW Concierge.

You are connected to an employee of the BMW Concierge to obtain the required information. You can then have the phone number and address sent to you and, for example, use it for destination guidance in the navigation system. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Concierge. When an information message is received, a list of the received messages is displayed automatically.

Messages

SMS, BMW Concierge messages and MyInfo messages from the BMW Assist portal are listed here, refer to Messages on page 170.

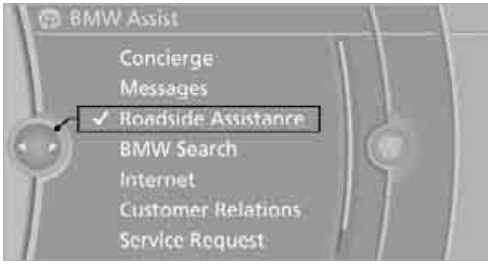
Roadside Assistance

You can call BMW Roadside Assistance* should you require help in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"



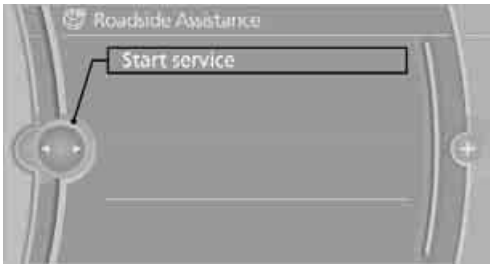
The Roadside Assistance number is displayed.

3. Dial the number. If a mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to BMW Roadside Assistance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. TeleService Diagnosis can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission. TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

If the services included in a valid BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search

BMW Search is an Internet portal that makes available a number of services for use in the vehicle, e.g. information on restaurants on your route, your own address book or an e-mail account.

BMW Search is always displayed across the full screen.

Requirements

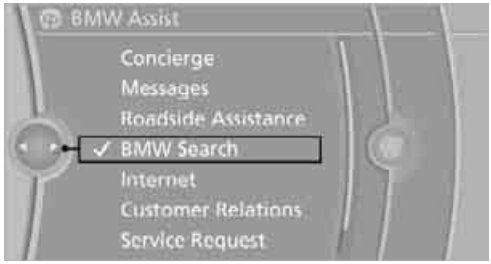
▷ Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.

▷ The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

▷ The date setting on the Control Display is current.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"



3. Select "OK", if necessary.

The BMW Search start page is displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Using BMW Search

To select and display content:

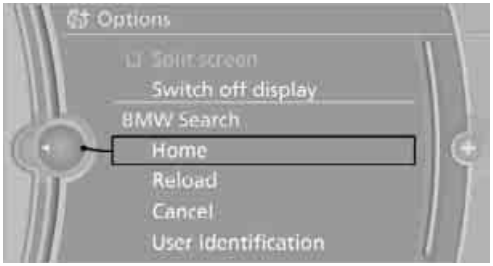
▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.

▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

CarManuals2.com

1. Open "Options".
2. "Home"



Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Update"

Canceling

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Logging in

To display e-mails, contacts from BMW Search or other personal data, you need to log in.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"
3. Open "Options".
4. "User identification"
5. "User name:"

6. Enter the user name and select "OK".
7. "Password"
8. Enter the password and select "OK".
9. "OK"

Logging in automatically

When BMW Search is opened, you are logged in automatically.

"Logon automatically"

Logging off

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"
3. Open "Options".
4. "User logoff"

Internet*

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Internet"

The start page is displayed. The Internet pages may not be displayed in the same way as on a PC screen. Flash and Java applications cannot be displayed.

Using the Internet

Menu bar

A menu bar is displayed for use. To activate the menu bar, move the controller to the left until the cursor is located in the menu bar.

Symbol	Function
	Activate the mouse cursor
	Opening the start page
	Refresh
	Cancel
	Back
	Entering an Internet address
	Bookmarks/favorites
	Zoom
	Leave the browser

Navigating with the mouse pointer

1. Select the symbol.
2. Use the mouse pointer to navigate on the page.
   - ▷ To move the mouse pointer: move the controller in the required direction
   - ▷ To select an element: press the controller
   - ▷ To scroll: turn the controller

Status display

A symbol at the top left of the screen shows the following statuses.

Symbol	Function
	No connection possible
	Data transfer
	Secure connection

Entering an Internet address

1. "Enter Internet address"
2. Individually select the letters and characters of the desired address.
3. Select "OK".

Bookmarks/favorites

Adding a bookmark

The page currently being displayed is stored as a bookmark.

1. Select the symbol.
2. "Add to bookmarks"

CarManuals2.com

Selecting a bookmark

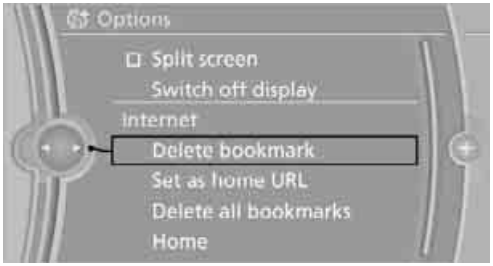
1. Select the symbol.
2. Select the desired bookmark.

Deleting a bookmark

1. Select the symbol.
2. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

3. "Delete bookmark"or"Delete all bookmarks"



Defining a bookmark as the start page

1. Select the ☆ symbol.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Set as home URL"

Settings

Suppressing cookies

1. Open "Options".
2. "Suppress cookies"

Suppressing pop-ups

1. Open "Options".
2. "Suppress pop-ups"

Suppressing safety warnings

1. Open "Options".
2. "Block HTTPS pop-ups"

Activating TeleService*

If the services are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Activate TeleService"

Customer Relations

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. When the vehicle is equipped with BMW Assist or a mobile phone preparation package, a voice connection is established when a mobile phone is connected.

TeleService Call*

You can send a request to your BMW center to arrange a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. Your BMW center will contact you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

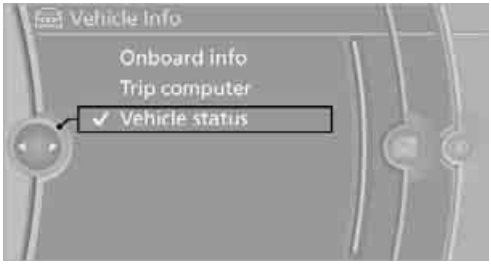
3. "Start service"

Automatic TeleService Call*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your BMW center prior to the service deadline. The center will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

BMW center*

Address and contact data of the BMW center.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Your BMW center"

Data transfer

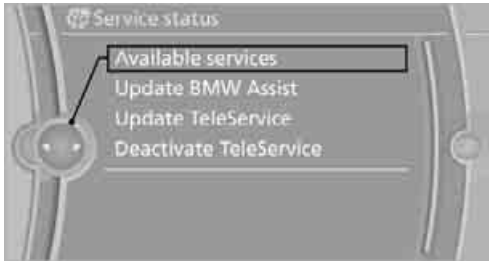
The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Data transfer"

Services status

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service status"
3. "Available services"



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

CarManuals2.com

Refueling

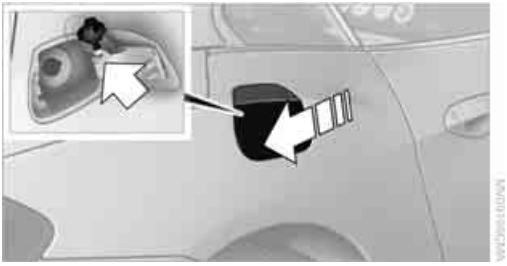
Always switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel. Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident.◀

Fuel filler door

Opening



1. Open fuel filler door. To do so, lightly press the rear edge.
2. Turn the gas cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the gas cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not pinch the band attached to the cap, otherwise the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. A message will be displayed if the gas cap is loose or missing.◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler door

In the event of a malfunction, you can release the fuel filler door manually:

Pull the button in the cargo bay with the fuel pump symbol down. The fuel filler door is released.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety instructions provided at filling stations, otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or property damage.◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to

- premature pump shutoff
- reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 15.5 US gallons/55 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gallons/8 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Fuel specifications

Do not fill the tank with leaded fuel as this would cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter.
Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85% ethanol, nor with FlexFuel. Otherwise, the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is:

- ▷ Z4 sDrive30i: 87
- ▷ Z4 sDrive35i: 89

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

Do not use any gasoline below the specified minimum fuel grade. Otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

CarManuals2.com

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressures

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it, if necessary: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with deflated, i.e. flat tires, except when using Run-Flat Tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to loss of control over the vehicle.◀

CarManuals2.com

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 83, or the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 81.◀

Inflation pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and tire brands recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes for your vehicle
- ▷ Load conditions
- ▷ Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h and to achieve optimum driving comfort, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds up to a maximum of 100 mph or 160 km/h.

These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's-side door post when the driver's door is open.

The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph or 160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

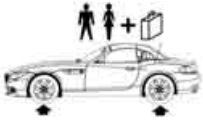
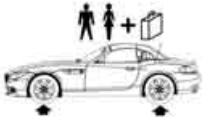
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph or 160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the laws could occur.

Tire inflation pressures Z4 sDrive30i

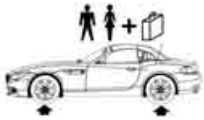
CarManuals2.com

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sports package:				
225/45 R 17 91 V 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	42/290
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	42/290
with Sports package:				
225/45 R 17 91 W 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	44/300

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 222.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures Z4 sDrive35i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
without Sports package:				
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
Front: 225/45 R 17 91 V	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 V	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	49/270	-	42/290
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	42/290
with Sports package:				
225/45 R 17 91 H M+S 225/45 R 17 94 V M+S XL	36/250	44/300	36/250	44/300
Front: 225/45 R 17 91W	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/40 R 17 94 W	-	39/270	-	39/270
Front: 225/40 R 18 88 W	36/250	-	38/260	-
Rear: 255/35 R 18 90 W	-	42/290	-	45/310
Front: 225/35 R 19 88 Y XL	36/250	-	36/250	-
Rear: 255/30 R 19 91 Y XL	-	42/290	-	44/300
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 222.				

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 225/45 R 17 91 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating, not on ZR tires
Speed code letter, in front of the R on ZR tires

Speed code letter

Q = up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph or 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph or 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph or 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph or 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph or 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 0709

Manufacturer's code for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT ... 0709 means that the tire was manufactured in week 7 of 2009.

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – Run-Flat Tires

You will recognize Run-Flat Tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 195.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Designation for specially reinforced tires.

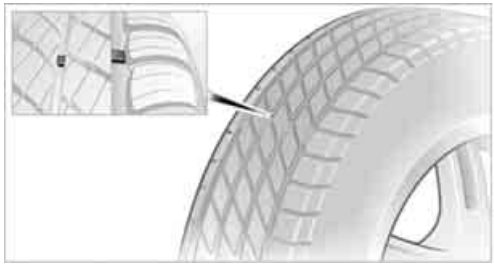
Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 1/8 in/ 3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 1/8 in/ 3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 1/6 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. In the interest of safety, new tires should be installed.

CarManuals2.com



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove are distributed around the tire's circumference; the letters TWI, for Tread Wear Indicator, on the tire's sidewalls identify tires that incorporate these wear indicators. Once the tire tread has worn down to the wear indicators, the tire has worn to a depth of 1/16 in/1.6 mm.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazard and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. The same applies to any other abnormal road behavior, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there.
Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous for vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Tire age

For various reasons, such as the development of brittleness, BMW recommends tire replacement after no more than 6 years, regardless of the actual wear of the tires.

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding:
DOT ... 0709 means that the tire was manufactured in week 7 of 2009.

Run-Flat Tires

The symbol identifying Run-Flat Tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.
Run-Flat Tires comprise a conditionally self-supporting tire and a special rim. The reinforcement in the sidewalls ensures that the tire can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurized.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 81.

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW recommends that you do not use retreaded tires, since driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include potentially different tire casing structures and often wide variations in tire age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

Correct wheels and tires

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount Run-Flat Tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions, which could lead to body contact and thus to severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot guarantee their driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

The correct combination of wheels and tires is also necessary to ensure reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS, DSC or TPM.

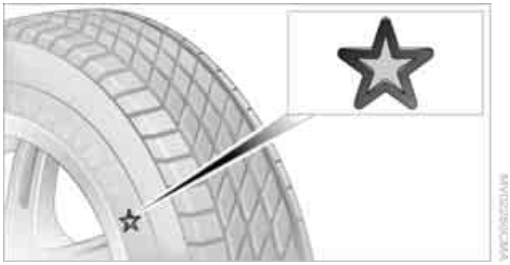
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single brand and tread configuration. After a tire has been damaged, mount the previous wheel and tire combination again as soon as possible.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitor TPM electronics

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics; otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor may not be able to detect a puncture, refer to page 82. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

CarManuals2.com

Recommended tire brands



Certain makes of tire are recommended by BMW for each tire size. They are marked with a clearly visible BMW designation on the sidewall of the tire.

When properly used, these tires meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F /+7 °C. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tires mounted on your car; failure to do so could result in tire damage and accidents.◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tires, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the mounted tires must be displayed in your field of view. Specialist tire dealers and your BMW center can supply these labels.

Storage

Always store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire.

CarManuals2.com

Swapping wheels between axles

BMW advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles, even if all tires have the same size, as this could impair driving characteristics. If the tires are of mixed sizes, swapping wheels between the axles is not permissible.

Snow chains*

Only certain fine-link snow chains have been tested by BMW, classified as safe for use and recommended. Consult your BMW center for more information.
Snow chains must be mounted in pairs and on the rear wheels only. Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph or 50 km/h.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted, otherwise the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, you may find it helpful to activate DTC temporarily, refer to page 78.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Under the hood

Do not work on the car unless you possess the necessary technical knowledge. If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a BMW center or by a workshop that work according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing

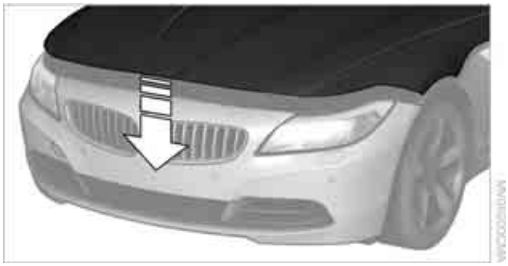
Pull the lever.

Opening

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the engine compartment. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down, otherwise injuries may result.◀

Push the release lever to the right and open the hood.

Closing

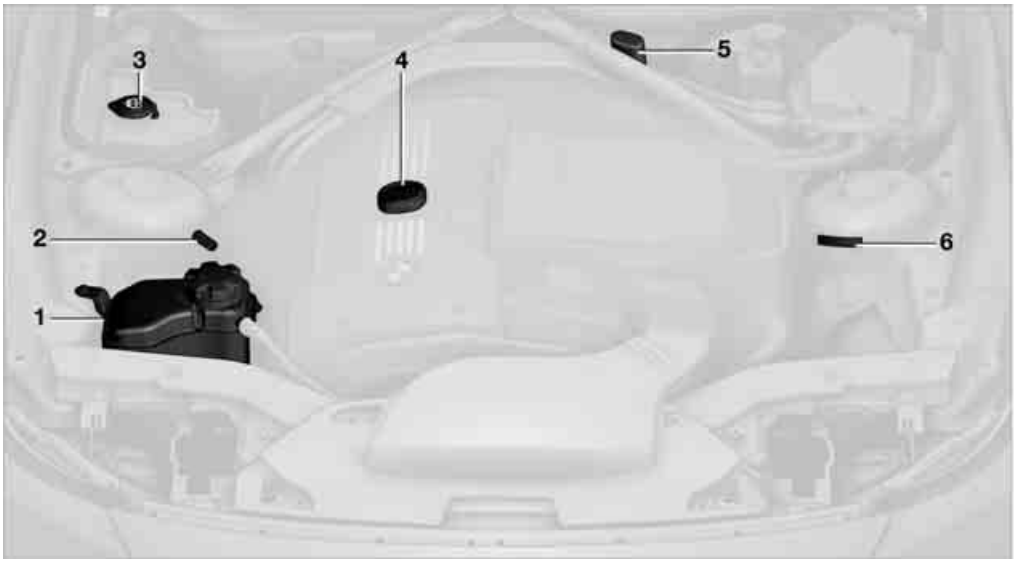


Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.

If you see any signs while driving your vehicle that the hood is not completely closed, stop at once and close it securely.◀

Important parts of the engine compartment



1 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 200

2 Jump-starting connection, negative terminal, refer to page 214

3 Washer fluid filler neck for headlamp cleaning system and window washer system, refer to page 61

4 Fluid filler neck for engine oil, refer to page 200

5 Jump-starting connection, positive terminal, refer to page 214

6 Vehicle identification number

CarManuals2.com

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your car is equipped with an electronic oil-level monitor.

For the oil level to be measured and displayed correctly, it is necessary that the engine be at operating temperature, i.e. after uninterrupted driving for at least approx. 6.5 miles/10 km. You can have the oil level displayed while you are driving, or while the vehicle is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running.

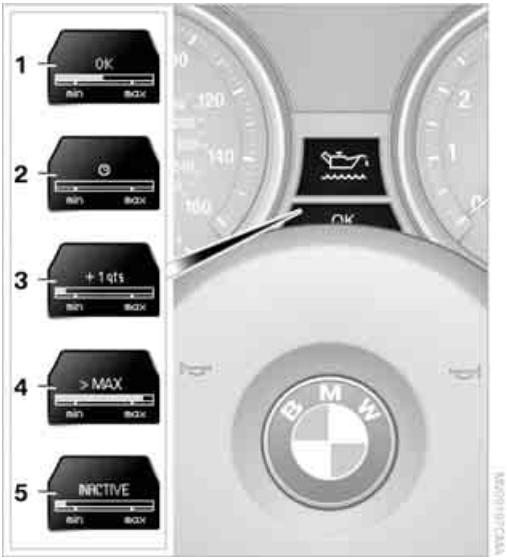
Display in the instrument cluster

1. Press button **1** in the turn indicator lever up or down repeatedly until the appropriate symbol is shown in the display, accompanied by the word "OIL".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

2. Press button **2** in the turn indicator lever. The oil level is checked and the reading displayed.

Possible displays



1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being checked.
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface, or about 5 minutes while the car is on the move.

3 Oil level down to minimum:
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil on page 200.

4 Oil level is too high.

⚠ Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

5 The oil level sensor is defective.
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to page 69. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Engine oil level"

CarManuals2.com

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."

▷ "Measuring engine oil level...":
This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is moving.
If engine oil was added, it may take up to 30 minutes to obtain an oil level reading.

▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"
Add engine oil as soon as possible, but no more than 1 US quart/1 liter, refer also to Adding engine oil below.

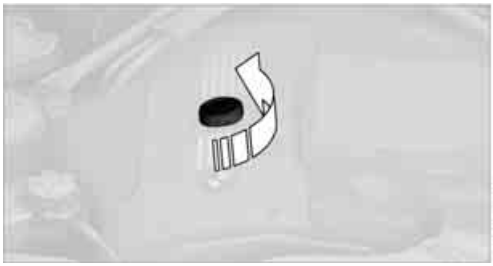
▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."

⚠ Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

▷ "Measurement inactive. Have this checked."
Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to page 69. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, the engine damage could occur.◀

Keep oils, greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the relevant warnings on the containers. Otherwise, health hazards may result.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Specified engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Do not use oil additives as these may cause engine damage.◀

CarManuals2.com

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is not available, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils in between oil changes. Only use oils with the API SM specification or higher.

Your BMW center will be glad to answer any questions regarding BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity ratings

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is categorized in SAE classes.

Selecting the appropriate SAE class depends on the regional climatic conditions in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 and 5W-30 SAE classes.◀

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant consists of half water and half additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. Because additives are harmful to your health, it is important to follow the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Checking coolant level

1. Do not open the engine hood before the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the expansion tank cap counterclockwise slightly to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct if it is between the maximum and minimum marks in the filler neck, refer also to the diagram next to the filler neck.

CarManuals2.com

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The BMW Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The objective is to optimize efforts with respect to minimal vehicle maintenance costs.

If and when you come to sell your BMW, a comprehensive record of servicing will prove a significant benefit.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

On the Control Display, you can have the remaining times or distances for selected maintenance tasks and any legally prescribed dates displayed, refer to page 69:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads, separately for the front and back
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores service-requirement information in the remote control while you are driving. Your BMW Service Advisor can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimized maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your BMW Service Advisor the remote control unit that you last used.

Make sure that the date is always set correctly, refer to page 72; otherwise the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Socket for On-Board Diagnosis OBD

Primary components that make up exhaust emissions can be checked by a device via the OBD socket.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

This socket is located on the driver's side to the left, on the bottom of the instrument panel underneath a cover.

Exhaust emission values

SERVICE ENGINE SOON

The warning lamp lights up:
The vehicle emissions are raised. The trip can be continued. Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Canadian models display this warning lamp.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This indicates excessive misfiring in the engine. If this happens, you should reduce your speed and visit your nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Severe engine misfiring can quickly lead to serious damage of emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

The warning lamp comes on if the gas cap is not properly tightened and the OBD system assumes that fuel vapor is escaping. If the gas cap is then tightened, the warning lamp should go out within a few days.

Data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring or diagnostic modules or a device for recording or sending certain vehicle data or information. In addition, if you have signed a service contract for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data may be transmitted or recorded in order to facilitate the corresponding services.

CarManuals2.com

Care

Care products

Regular cleaning and care contributes significantly to the value retention of your BMW.

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends cleaning and caring for your vehicle with products that are approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on the products and services available for cleaning and caring for your BMW.

Original BMW CareProducts have been material tested, laboratory checked and proven in the field, and offer optimal care and protection for your vehicle.◀

Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents as these may result in damage.◀

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or hazardous to your health. Therefore, follow the warning and safety instructions on the packaging. When cleaning inside the vehicle, always open the doors or windows of the vehicle. In enclosed areas, provide for sufficient ventilation. Only use products designed for cleaning vehicles.◀

Exterior care

Washing the vehicle

Especially during the winter months, ensure that the vehicle is washed more frequently. Heavy soiling and road salt can lead to vehicle damage.◀

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them, otherwise water can reduce braking efficiency over the short term and brake discs can corrode.◀

Automatic car washes

Preference should be given to cloth car washes.

Do not use high-pressure car washes, otherwise water may drip into the vehicle around the windows.◀

Before driving into a car wash, ensure that it is suitable for your BMW. Check the following:

- ▷ Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 221.
- ▷ If necessary: fold in the exterior mirrors, refer to page 45.
- ▷ Maximum permissible tire width.

Avoid car washes with guide rail heights over 4 in/10 cm, otherwise there is danger of damaging chassis parts.◀

Preparations before driving into an automatic car wash:

- ▷ Unscrew the rod antenna*
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor* to avoid unintentional activation of the wipers.
- ▷ Remove additional attachments, e.g. spoiler or telephone antennas, if there is a possibility that they could be damaged.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into an automatic car wash, perform the following steps to ensure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Insert the remote control, even with convenient access, into the ignition lock.
2. Move the selector lever to position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Before driving into an automatic car wash, perform the following steps to ensure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Insert the remote control, even with convenient access, into the ignition lock.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

CarManuals2.com

Transmission position P is engaged:

▷ Automatically after approx. 30 minutes

▷ When you take the remote control out of the ignition lock

Steam jets / high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, ensure that you maintain sufficient clearance to the vehicle and do not exceed a temperature of 60°C.
Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure or temperature can lead to component damage or water penetration. Follow the operating instructions of the high-pressure washer.◀

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray against the seals of the retractable hardtop, the sensors and the cameras, e.g. of the Park Distance Control or Rear View Camera, for an extended period and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.◀

Manual car wash

When washing the vehicle by hand, use large quantities of water and car shampoo if necessary. Clean the vehicle with a sponge or washing brush, applying light pressure only.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unintentional activation of the wipers.◀

Observe local regulations pertaining to washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub them dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Remove contamination, such as insects, by soaking with shampoo or insect remover and then rinsing with plenty of water.
Thaw ice with a windshield de-icer and do not use an ice scraper.

Windows

Clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the mirrors with window cleaner.

Do not clean the mirrors with cleaners containing quartz.◀

Retractable hardtop

Proceed as you would in a normal car wash.

When you open a wet hardtop, water drops may run into the cargo bay. If necessary, remove items from the cargo bay beforehand to avoid water stains or soiling.◀

Paintwork care

Regular care contributes to value retention and protects the paintwork against the long-term effects of damaging substances.

Region-specific environmental influences can damage the vehicle paintwork. Therefore, it is important to adapt the frequency and scope of car care accordingly.

Immediately remove aggressive materials such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree sap or bird droppings to prevent damage to the paintwork.

Repairing paintwork damage

Immediately repair scratches or similar damage, such as that caused by stones hitting the vehicle, where necessary to prevent rusting.◀

BMW recommends having paintwork damage repaired by a professional paint repair workshop according to BMW specifications using original BMW paint materials.

Preservation

A preservation treatment is necessary when water no longer beads off of the clean paintwork surface. Only use products for paintwork preservation that contain carnauba or synthetic waxes.

CarManuals2.com

Rubber seals

Treat only with water or rubber care products.

Do not use silicon-containing care products on rubber seals; otherwise, noise and damage could occur.◀

Chrome parts

Carefully clean vehicle parts, such as the radiator grill, door handles or window frames, with copious quantities of water and a shampoo additive. For additional treatment, use a chrome polish.

Light-alloy wheels

For technical reasons, dust is generated during braking that is deposited on the light-alloy wheels. Remove the dust regularly using acid-free rim cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline and abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets over 140 °F /60 °C, otherwise damage may occur.◀

Outside sensors / cameras

Keep the sensors and cameras on the outside of the vehicle, e.g. those of Park Distance Control, clean and free of ice to ensure that they remain fully functional.◀

Interior care

Upholstery / cloth trim

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner to remove superficial dirt.

To treat severe stains, e.g. from beverages, use a soft sponge or lint-free microfiber cloth in combination with suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using a sweeping motion. Avoid strong rubbing.◀

Opened Velcro fasteners, etc., on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather / leather trim

The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight irregularities in the leather are a typical characteristic of natural leather.◀

Dust and road grit in the pores and folds of the leather have an abrasive effect, leading to increased wear and causing the leather surface to become brittle prematurely. Therefore, regularly dust the leather with a cloth, for example.

In particular, ensure that light-colored leather is cleaned regularly as it has a tendency to soil more easily.

Treat the leather at least twice a year using a suitable leather lotion, as dirt and grease will gradually attack the leather's protective layer.

Rivets, etc., on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers.◀

Carpets / cargo bay

You can vacuum the carpets and floor mats or clean them with interior cleaner if heavily soiled.

The floor mats can be removed for cleaning. When replacing the mats, ensure that the seat rails do not extend over the floor mats, as this may damage the mats.

Lint on the floor mats occurs for technical reasons and can be removed by vacuuming repeatedly.

When cleaning the interior, do not move both seats all the way forward while moving them to their uppermost position and leaning the backrests forward. Otherwise, the seats could hit and damage the seal on the windshield, the sun visor or the headliner.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Interior plastic parts

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces
- ▷ Lamp glasses
- ▷ Display pane of instrument cluster
- ▷ Matt parts

Clean with water and solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trim and fine wood parts with a damp cloth. Wipe dry with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

⚠ Do not clean with cleaning agents as these may destroy the fabric.◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles. Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Interior sensors / cameras

To clean interior sensors and cameras, e.g. of the High-Beam Assistant, use a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

To clean the displays, e.g. of the radio or instrument cluster, use a display cleaning cloth or a soft, non-abrasive, lint-free cloth.

⚠ Avoid applying excessive pressure when cleaning the displays, otherwise damage may occur.◀

⚠ Do not use chemical or abrasive household cleaning agents. Keep all types of fluid away from the device. Otherwise, surfaces or electrical components may be corroded or damaged.◀

CD/DVD drives

⚠ Do not use a cleaning CD, as it may damage parts of the drive.◀

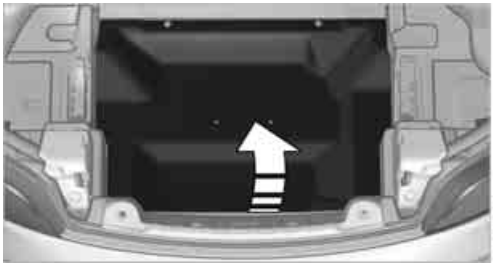
Vehicle storage

If your vehicle is to be decommissioned for longer than three months, your BMW center or a workshop that operates according to BMW specifications will be glad to advise you.

CarManuals2.com

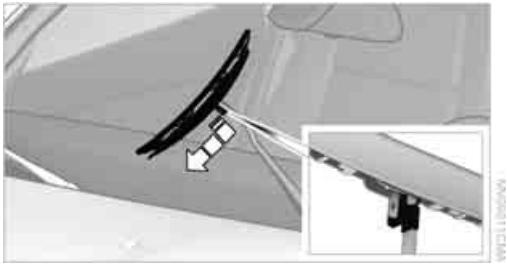
Replacing components

Onboard tool kit



The onboard tool kit is located in the cargo bay under the floor panel.

Wiper blades



1. Fold up the wiper arm.
2. Fold the wiper blade upwards.
3. Press the hook.
4. Pull the wiper blade downward out of the holder and remove it toward the top left, see arrow.

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are resting against the windshield before you open the engine compartment.◀

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

CarManuals2.com

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your BMW center.

Only change bulbs while they are cool to the touch, otherwise you could suffer burns.◀

When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question, otherwise short-circuits could result. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For care of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the chapter entitled 'Care'.

If the routine for changing a particular bulb is not described here, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.◀

Light-emitting diodes LED

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours, otherwise this could cause irritation to the retina.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Xenon lamps

Have any work on the xenon lamp system, including bulb replacements, performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, if such work is carried out improperly, the high voltage in the system presents the danger of fatal injuries.◀

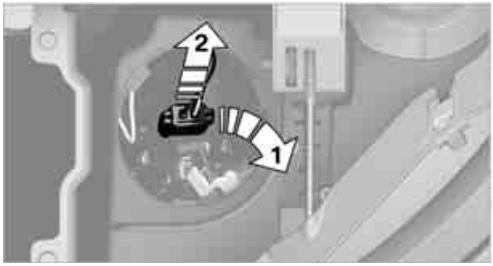
Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

H8 bulb, 35 watts

1. Switch off the lamps and take the remote control out of the ignition lock.
2. Turn the upper access cover to the left and remove it, see arrow.

CarManuals2.com

3. Turn the bulb by approx. 90°, see arrow **1**, and pull it out, see arrow **2**.



4. Disconnect the plug, change the bulb and reconnect the plug.
5. Insert the bulb and turn it until it stops.
6. Screw on the access cover tightly by turning it to the right.

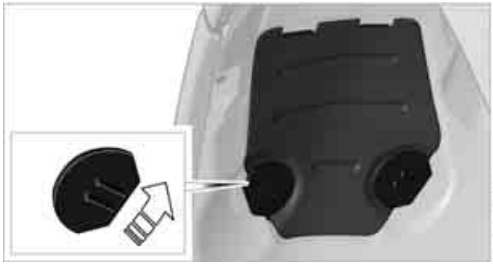
Be careful when attaching the access cover; otherwise it may leak, causing damage to the headlamp system.◀

Turn signals, front

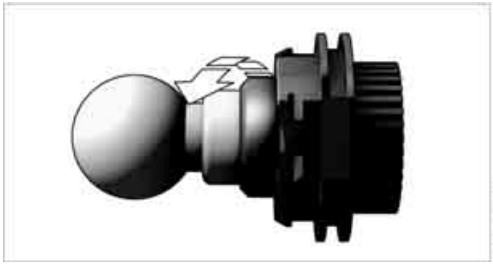
P24W bulb, 24 watt

1. Turn the wheel outwards.

2. Turn both locks in the wheel house to the left and remove the cover.



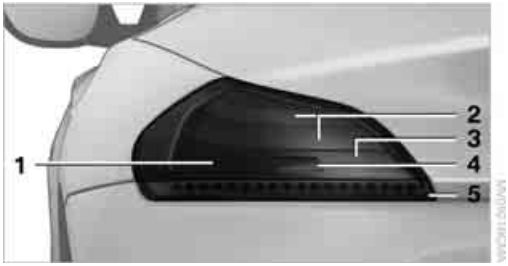
3. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove it.
4. Turn the bulb to the right, see arrow, and remove it.



5. Change the bulb and screw it into the bulb holder toward the left.
6. Insert the bulb holder and turn it to the right.
7. Reattach the cover.

Tail lamps

▷ Brake lamp, backup lamp: W16W bulb, 16 watts



1 Brake lamp

2 Tail lamp, LED

3 Brake lamp

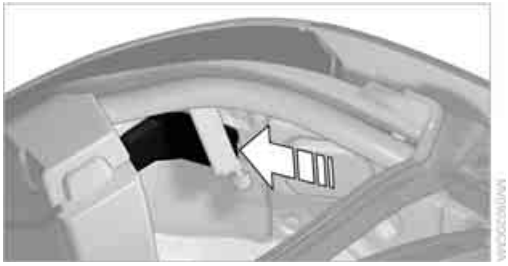
4 Backup lamp

5 Turn signal, LED

If bulb **2** or **5** malfunctions, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing the backup lamp and inner brake lamp

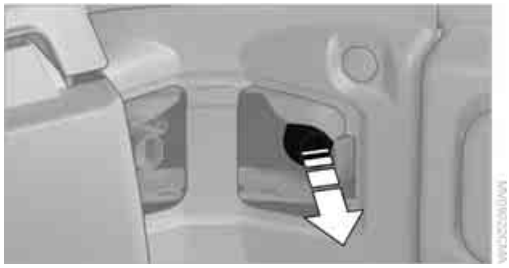
1. Press the locking mechanism in the cargo bay, see arrow, and remove the cover.



2. Pull out the bulb holder and replace the bulb.

▷ Inner brake lamp:

▷ Backup lamp:



3. Attach the bulb holder.
4. Reattach the cover.

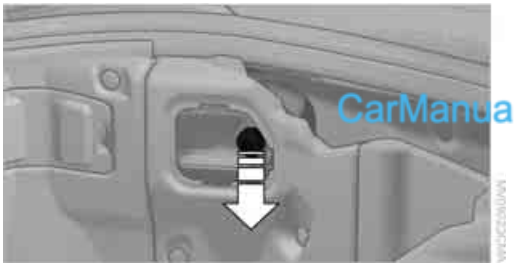
Changing the outer brake lamp

1. Remove the cover in the cargo bay..

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

2. Pull out the bulb holder, see arrow, and change the bulb.



3. Attach the bulb holder.
4. Reattach the cover.

License plate lamp, rear lamp, center brake lamp and turn signal

These lamps use LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please contact your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with Run-Flat Tires as standard. This removes the need to change a wheel immediately in the event of a puncture.

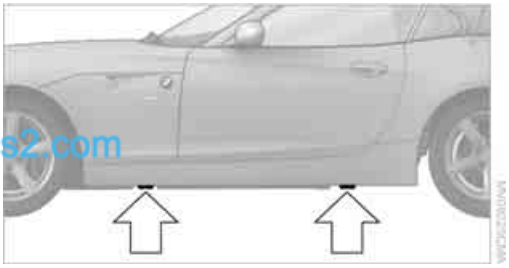
For information on continuing to drive with a damaged tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire on page 81.

The symbol identifying Run-Flat Tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall, refer to Run-Flat Tires, page 195.

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount Run-Flat Tires for your own safety. In the event of a flat, no spare wheel is available. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you. Refer also to New wheels and tires, page 195.

▷ The tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from your BMW center.◀

Jack mounting points



The jacking points are at the positions shown in the illustration.

Lug bolt lock*

1 Lug bolt for adapter

2 Adapter, in onboard tool kit

Removing the wind deflector

1. Remove the adapter **2** from the onboard tool kit and insert it in the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt **1**.

Remove the adapter after screwing the lug bolt back on.

The code number is stamped on the front of the adapter. Please note down this number and keep it in a safe place in case the adapter should get lost.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

CarManuals2.com

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 214.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery against tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings may likewise have been lost and will have to be programmed:

- ▷ Time and date
  These values must be updated, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Radio
  In some cases, stations may have to be stored again, refer to page 142.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Operability must be waited for, refer to page 118.
- ▷ Seat and mirror memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 43.
- ▷ Inside rearview mirror with digital compass
  The system must be calibrated, refer to page 101.

Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, otherwise this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

1. Remove the screws **1** using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit.
2. Remove the cover **2**, unwinding the cable to the footwell lamp*, if necessary.

3. Release the shiny fastener **3**.

4. Fold the current distributor **4** downward and pull forward.

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic forceps are set in holders on the distributor box.

See the inside of the cover for information on fuse assignment.

The cover is reinstalled in reverse order.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency Request*

Conditions for an Emergency Request:

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 180.
- ▷ Radio readiness is on.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a wireless network.
- ▷ The Emergency Request system is operable.
- ▷ Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone. This equipment makes it possible to send an Emergency Request even if no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after a new contract has been signed.

Sending an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open.

2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your Emergency Request, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center will be able to initiate further steps to assist you under certain conditions.

CarManuals2.com

If the circumstances allow this, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

In a BMW Assist Emergency Request, data for determining the necessary rescue measures are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. the current position of your vehicle, if it can be determined.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is sent automatically immediately after a severe accident. This Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by the button being pressed.

⚠ For technical reasons, the Emergency Request service cannot be guaranteed for the most unfavorable conditions.◀

Roadside Assistance

The BMW Roadside Assistance is there to assist you around the clock in the event of a breakdown, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

In vehicles equipped with BMW Assist, you can establish contact with BMW Roadside Assistance for breakdown assistance directly via iDrive, refer to page 184.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

First aid pouch*

Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items in good time, if necessary.

The first aid pouch is located in the lateral storage compartment behind the seats.

Warning triangle*

CarManuals2.com

The warning triangle is located in a holder in the luggage compartment lid. Press the tabs to take it out.

Jump starting

If the car's own battery is flat, your BMW's engine can be started by connecting two jumper cables to another vehicle's battery. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Only use jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠ Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

⚠ There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

⚠ Connect the jumper cables in the correct order, so that no sparks which could cause injury occur.◀

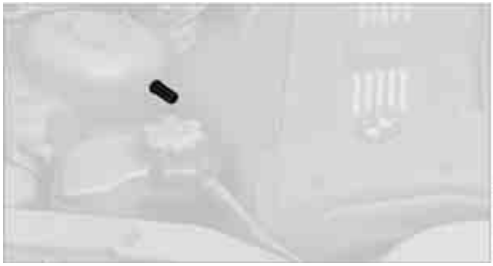
Your BMW has a jump-starting connection in the engine compartment which acts as the battery's positive terminal, refer also to the Engine compartment overview on page 198. The cap is marked with +.

1. Pull the cap of the BMW jump-starting connection up to remove.

2. Attach one terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

4. Attach one terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.
   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative pole.



5. Attach the second terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first start attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the above connecting sequence.

If necessary, have the battery checked and recharged.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting, towing away

Observe the applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing vehicles.◀

CarManuals2.com

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using a tow fitting

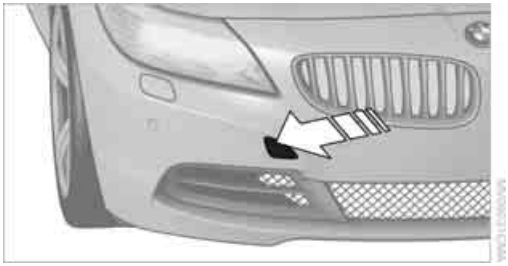
The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the car. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

It is stored in the onboard tool kit underneath the floor panel in the cargo bay, refer to page 208.

Use only the towing eyelet supplied with the vehicle and screw it in firmly until it stops. Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise the tow fitting and the vehicle could be damaged.◀

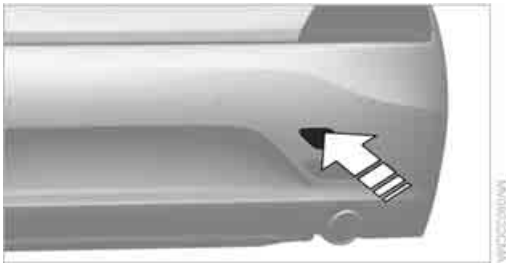
Access to screw thread

Front



Release the cover panel in the bumper:
Press on the recess at the bottom left in the cover panel.

Rear



Release the cover panel in the bumper:
Press on the recess at the bottom center in the cover panel.

Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 50, otherwise the low-beam headlamps, tail lamps, turn signal indicators and windshield wipers may be unavailable.

If the electrical system fails, do not tow-start or tow the vehicle. The electrical steering wheel lock cannot be released and the vehicle cannot be steered. Jump-starting, refer to page 214.

Power steering assistance is not available when the engine is not running. Thus, braking and steering will require increased effort.◀

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.
Changing selector lever positions, refer to page 54.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 31 mph or 50 km/h and a towing distance of 31 miles/50 km, otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch

Ensure that transmission lock P is not engaged as the rear wheels will otherwise be blocked.
When using the car wash function, refer to page 205, note that the parking lock P is engaged automatically after approx. 30 minutes, blocking the rear wheels.
If an electrical malfunction occurs or if towing takes longer than approx. 20 minutes, manually release the parking lock, refer to page 58.◀

Do not exceed a towing speed of 31 mph or 50 km/h and a towing distance of 31 miles/50 km, otherwise the 7-gear sport automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift the vehicle by a tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

With a tow bar

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be impossible to maintain control.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

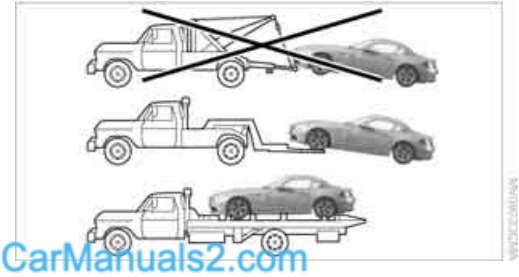
With a tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach the tow rope to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

With a tow truck

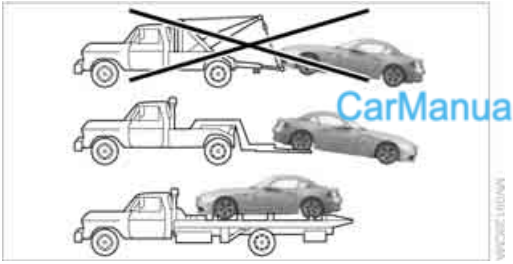
Manual and automatic transmission:



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch:



CarManuals2.com

Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

Avoid tow-starting the vehicle whenever possible; instead, jump-start the engine, refer to page 214. Vehicles with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission or 7-gear sport automatic transmission with dual clutch cannot be tow-started at all.

1. Switch on hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 50.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system and an index that will help you find information most quickly.

CarManuals2.com

Technical data

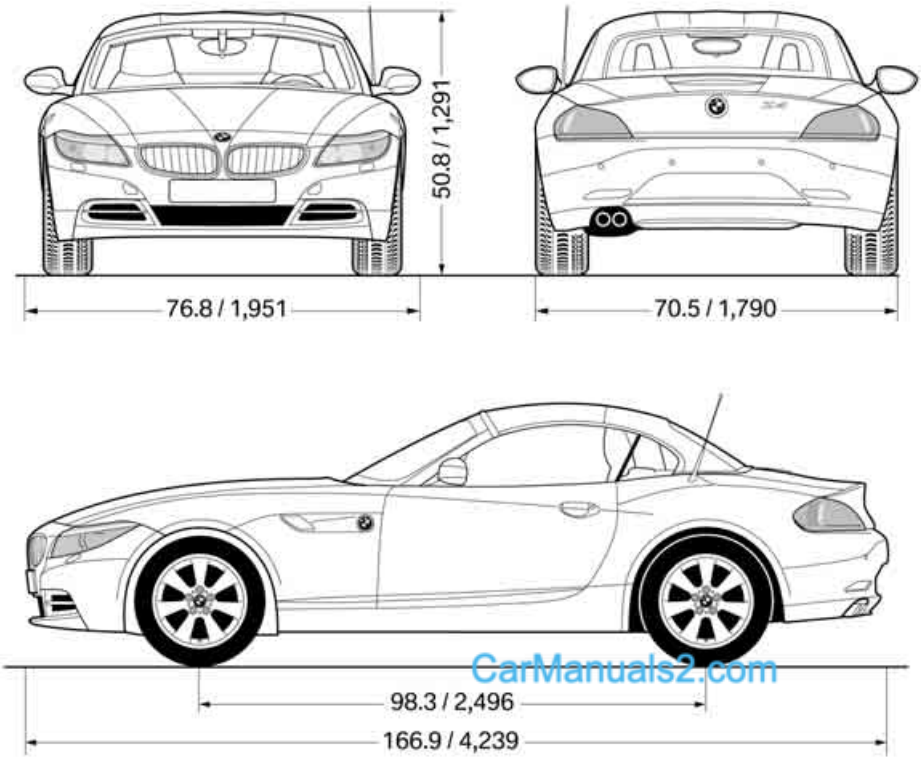
Engine data

		Z4 sDrive30i	Z4 sDrive35i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996	181.8/2,979
Number of cylinders		6	6
Maximum power output	hp	255	300
at engine speed	rpm	6,600	5,800
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	220/298	300/407
at engine speed	rpm	2,600	1,400 - 5,000

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Dimensions



CarManuals2.com

All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle diam.: 36 ft 1 in/11.0 m.

Weights

		Z4 sDrive30i	Z4 sDrive35i
Approved gross weight			
▷ with manual transmission	lbs/kg	3,924/1,780	4,134/1,875
▷ with automatic transmission	lbs/kg	3,990/1,810	4,178/1,895
Load	lbs/kg	562/255	562/255
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	1,808/820	1,918/870
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,227/1,010	2,271/1,030
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	6.4 - 10.9/180 - 310	6.4 - 10.9/180 - 310

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 15.5/55	Fuel grade:
including reserve of	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8.0	page 189
Window washer system			For more details:
including headlamp washers	US qt/liters	approx. 6.3/6.0	page 61

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Short commands for the voice activation system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice activation system.

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Tone control	›Tone‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the home address*	›Home address‹
Opening destination entry*	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance*	›Guidance‹

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g. CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ...‹ e.g. track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D and D V D‹
CD and DVD changer*	›C D and D V D‹
CD and DVD menu	›C D and D V D‹
Selecting a DVD	›D V D ...‹
Entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

CarManuals2.com

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up FM	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹
Calling up a frequency	›// NOT FOR US‹ e.g. 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Selecting a radio station	›Station …‹ e.g. W-PLJ
Calling up a station	›Select station‹ e.g. W-PLJ

AM

Function	Command
Calling up AM	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹
Calling up a frequency	›// NOT FOR US‹ e.g. frequency 753 kilohertz or 753 kilohertz

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Satellite radio channel‹ e.g. channel 2

Presets

Function	Command
Calling up the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ...‹ e.g. stored station 2

Telephone

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth	›Bluetooth‹

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Ending destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹

CarManuals2.com

Function	Command
Switching off the voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Perspective map‹
Automatic scaling of the map*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹
Scale...feet*	›Map scale ... feet‹ e.g. map scale of 100 feet
Scale...meters*	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g. map scale of 100 meters
Scale...kilometers*	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g. map scale of 5 kilometers
Scale...miles*	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g. map scale of 5 miles
Scale...yards*	›Map scale ... yards‹ e.g. map scale of 100 yards

CarManuals2.com

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹
Split screen scale...feet*	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g. split screen scale of 100 feet
Split screen scale...meters*	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g. split screen scale of 100 meters

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Split screen scale...kilometers*	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g. split screen scale of 5 kilometers
Split screen scale...miles*	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g. split screen scale of 5 miles
Split screen scale...yards*	›Split screen scale ... yards‹ e.g. split screen scale of 100 yards
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹

Contacts

Function	Command
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search*	›B M W Search‹
Opening the Internet*	›Internet‹

Vehicle information

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

CarManuals2.com

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹
Central display settings	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Limit‹
Opening the light menu	›Lighting‹
Selecting the door lock	›Door locks‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions and refers you to the page where these texts can be found.

CarManuals2.com

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 78
Acceleration assistant, refer to Launch Control 58
Accident, refer to Sending an Emergency Request 213
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 97
Adaptive Head Light 89
Additional connection of the music player in the mobile phone 158
Additives
– coolant 200
Address for navigation, entering 119
Adjusting temperature inside the car, refer to Air conditioner 93
Adjusting temperature inside the car, refer to Automatic climate control 95
Adjusting the thigh support 42
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 138
Airbags 85
– indicator/warning lamp 87
– sitting safely 41
Air conditioner 92
Air conditioning mode
– air conditioner 93
– automatic climate control 95
– ventilation 94, 97
Air distribution
– automatic 96
– individual 93
– manual 93
Air flow rate 93, 96
Airing, refer to Ventilation 94
Airing, refer to Ventilation 94, 97
Air outlets, refer to Air vents 92
Air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 190
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93, 97
Air supply
– air conditioner 93
– automatic climate control 95
– ventilation 94, 97
Air vents 92
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 189
Alarm system 33
– avoiding unintentional alarms 34
– interior motion sensor 34
– switching off an alarm 34
– tilt alarm sensor 34
Albums of music collection 155
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 196
AM, waveband 141
Ambient air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93, 97
Antenna for mobile phone 164
Antifreeze
– coolant 200
– washer fluid 61
Antilock Brake System ABS 78
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 33
Anti-theft system 29
– for lug bolts, refer to Lug bolt lock 211
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 222
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 222
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 102
Arrival time, refer to Computer 66
Ashtray
– front 104
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 78
AUC automatic recirculated-air control 97
Audio 138
– controls 138
– switching on/off 138
– tone control 138
– volume 138
Audio device, external 102
Automatic
– air distribution 96
– air flow rate 96
– cruise control 61
– headlamp control 88
Automatic car washes 204
Automatic climate control 92
– automatic air distribution 96
Automatic curb monitor 46
Automatic recirculated-air control AUC 97

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Automatic Service Request 184
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 53
– interlock 53, 54
– overriding selector lever lock 55
– shiftlock, refer to Changing selector lever position 54
– sport program 54
– towing 215
– tow-starting 215
AUTO program for automatic climate control 96
AUX-IN
– port 102
AUX-IN port 158
Average fuel consumption 66
– setting the units 68
Average speed 66
Avoiding unintentional alarms 34
Axle loads, refer to Weights 222

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 43
Backrests, refer to Seat adjustment 42
Backrest width adjustment 43
Backup lamps
– replacing bulb 210
Backup lamps, refer to Tail lamps 210
Band-aids, refer to First-aid pouch 214
Bar, refer to Towing methods 216
Base plate for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 174
– refer to Snap-in adapter in the center armrest storage compartment 102
Bass, tone setting 138
Battery 212
– charging 212
– disposal 36, 212
– jump starting 214
– remote control 28
– temporary power failure 212
Battery for mobile phone 175
Battery renewal
– remote control 36
– remote control for vehicle 36
Being towed 216
Belts, refer to Safety belts 44
Belt tensioner, refer to Safety belts 44
Beverage holders, refer to Cup holders 103
Blower, refer to Air flow rate 93, 96
Bluetooth, activating/deactivating 166
Bluetooth, refer to separate Owner's Manual
BMW
– car shampoo 207
BMW Assist, activating 180
BMW Assist 178
BMW center 184
BMW Homepage 4
BMW Maintenance System 202
BMW Search 180
BMW webpage 4
Bottle holders, refer to Cup holders 103
Brake
– parking brake 52
Brake assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control DBC 78
Brake fluid, refer to Service requirements 69
Brake lamps
– replacing bulb 210
Brake pads 110
– breaking in 110
Brake rotors 112
– brakes 110
– breaking in 110
Brakes
– ABS 78
– BMW Maintenance System 202
– breaking in 110
– service requirements 69
Brakes, refer to Braking safely 112
Brake system 110
– BMW Maintenance System 202
– breaking in 110
– disc brakes 112
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Breaking in the clutch 110
Breaking in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 110
Break-in period 110
Brightness of Control Display 76
Bulb changing, refer to Lamps and bulbs 208
Button for starting the engine, refer to Start/stop button 50
Buttons on the steering wheel 11
Buttons on the steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 warning 6
Call
– accepting 167
– ending 168
– rejecting 168
Calling, refer to Phone numbers, dialing 168
Can holders, refer to Cup holders 103
Capacities 222
Capacity of the cargo bay 222
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 212
Car care, refer to Care 204

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Care 204
– automatic car washes 204
– care products 204
– carpets 206
– CD/DVD drives 207
– chrome parts 206
– displays 207
– exterior 204
– fine wood parts 207
– headlamps 205
– high-pressure washer 205
– interior 206
– leather 206
– light-alloy wheels 206
– paintwork 205
– plastic parts 207
– retractable hardtop 205
– rubber seals 206
– safety belts 207
– sensors and cameras 207
– upholstery and cloth trim 206
– washing the car manually 205
– windows 205
Cargo, securing 114
Cargo bay
– capacity 222
– convenient access 35
– lamp, refer to Interior lamps 90
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
Cargo loading
– securing cargo 114
– stowing cargo 114
– vehicle 113
Car jack
– jacking points 211
Car key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 28
Car phone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
Car phone, refer to Telephone 164
Car radio, refer to Radio 141
Car shampoo 207
Car wash 113
– with convenient access 36
Car wash, refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 111
CBS Condition Based Service 202
CD, audio playback 146
CD/DVD changer 146
– controls 138
– fast forward/reverse 148
– random sequence 147
– switching on/off 138
– tone control 138
– volume 138
CD/DVD player 146
– controls 138
– fast forward/reverse 148
– random sequence 147
– switching on/off 138
– tone control 138
– volume 138
CD changer
– selecting a track 146
CD player
– selecting a track 146
Center armrest 102
Center brake lamp
– replacing bulb 211
Center console, refer to Around the center console 14
Central locking
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Central locking system 29
– convenient access 35
– setting unlocking characteristics 29
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 208
Changing the measurement units on the Control Display 68
Changing wheels 211
Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment 198
Check Control 73
Child-restraint systems 48
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 48
Chrome parts 207
Chrome polish 207
Cigarette lighter, refer to Lighter 104
Cleaning headlamps 60
– washer fluid 61
Cleaning your BMW, refer to Care 204
Clock 64
– 12h/24h mode 72
– setting the time and date 72
– setting time 71
Closing
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting the engine 51
Combined instrument, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Comfort access, refer to Convenient access 35
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 50
Compass 100
Computer 65
– displays on Control Display 66
Computer, refer to iDrive 16
Concierge service 179
Condensation, refer to When the vehicle is parked 112
Condition Based Service CBS 202
Configuring settings, refer to Personal Profile 28
Confirmation signals for locking/unlocking the vehicle 31

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Congestion
– refer to Route, bypassing sections 129
Connecting vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 104
Consumption, refer to Average consumption 66
Consumption display
– average consumption 66
Contacts 176
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive
– adjusting brightness 76
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
controls and displays 10
Control unit, refer to iDrive 16
Convenient access 35
– replacing the battery 36
– what to observe before entering a car wash 36
Convenient loading 30
Convenient operation 31
– retractable hardtop 30
– windows 30
Convertible
– enlarging cargo bay 38, 105
Coolant 200
– checking level 201
Coolant temperature 65
Cooling, maximum 96
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 200
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 200
Copyright 2
Corner-illuminating lamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 89
Cornering lamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 89
Correct tires 195
Country codes DVD 148
Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps 90
Criteria for route 128
Cross-hairs in navigation 124
Cruise control 61
– malfunction 63
Cruising range 65
Cup holders 103
Curb weight, refer to Weights 222
Current playback
– external devices 160
– music collection 155
Current position, displaying 134
Customer Relations 183

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Dashboard, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 90
Data, technical 220
– dimensions 221
– engine 220
– weights 222
Data recorders 203
Data transfer 184
Date
– date format 73
– setting 72
Daytime running lamps 89
DBC Dynamic Brake Control 78
DCC, refer to Cruise control 61
Deactivating passenger airbags 86
Deadlocking, refer to Locking 30
Defect
– door lock 32
– fuel filler door 188
Defogging windows 94
Defrosting windows 94
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 94
Destination for navigation
– entering by voice 125
– entry 119
– home address 122
– manual entry 119
– selecting via map 124
Destination guidance 128
– bypassing a route section 129
– changing specified route 128
– continuing 128
– starting 128
– voice instructions 129
– volume of voice instructions 130
Destination state/province, entering for navigation 119
Destination town/city, entering for navigation 119
Digital clock 64
Digital compass 100
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 142
Dimensions 221
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 59
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 129
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 121
Displacement, refer to Engine data 220
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 90
Displays
– on the Control Display 16
Displays, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displays and controls 10
Disposal
– coolant 200
– remote control battery 36
– vehicle battery 212
Distance remaining to service, refer to Service requirements 69

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Distance warning, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 77
Door key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Door lock 31
Doors, emergency operation 32
DOT Quality Grades 193
Draft-free ventilation 94, 97
Drinks holders, refer to Cup holders 103
Drive mode 57
Drive-off assistance, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 78
Drive-off assistant 80
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 88
Driving notes 110
Driving off on hills, refer to Drive-off assistant 80
Driving position, engaging, refer to Transmission positions 56
Driving stability control systems 78, 79
Driving through water 112
Driving tips, refer to Driving notes 110
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 78
Dual clutch transmission 55
– kick-down 57
DVD
– country codes 148
– settings 149
– video playback 148
DVD changer
– malfunctions 151
DVD menu 149
DVD video 148
Dynamic Brake Control DBC 78
Dynamic Driving Control 79

E

Eject button, refer to Buttons on the CD/DVD player 138
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 188
– M dual clutch transmission with Drivelogic 58
Electric seat adjustment 42
Electric steering wheel lock
– with convenient access 35
Electronic brake-force distribution EBV 78
Electronic oil level check 198
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 78
Emergency actuation, automatic transmission, refer to Overriding selector lever lock 55
Emergency operation
– fuel filler door, manual release 188
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 32
Emergency release
– luggage compartment lid from inside 33
Emergency Request 213
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Energy, saving
– saving fuel 110
Engine
– breaking in 110
– data 220
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 65
– speed 220
– starting 51
– starting, convenient access 35
– switching off 52
Engine compartment 198
Engine coolant, refer to Coolant 200
Engine oil
– adding 200
– BMW Maintenance System 202
– capacity 222
– checking level 198
– intervals between changes, refer to Service requirements 69
Engine output, refer to Engine data 220
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 220
Engine starting, refer to Starting the engine 51
Entering the address 119
Entry lamps, refer to Interior lamps 90
Entry map for destination 124
Equalizer, tone setting 139
Error messages, refer to Check Control 73
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 111
Exterior mirrors 45
– adjusting 45
– automatic dimming feature 46
– automatic heating 46
– folding in and out 45
External audio device 102
Eyes
– for tow-starting and towing away 215
– for tying down loads 114

F

Failure messages, refer to Check Control 73
Failure of an electrical consumer 212
False alarm
– avoiding unintentional alarm 34
– switching off an alarm 34

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 44
Fastest route for navigation 128
Fault
– parking brake 53
Filter
– refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 97
– refer to Microfilter for air conditioner 94
First aid pouch 214
Fixture for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 50
Flash when locking/unlocking 31
Flat tire
– Run-Flat Tires 195
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 82
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 81
– indicating a flat tire 81
– indicator/warning lamp 81
– initializing the system 81
– snow chains 81, 196
– system limits 81
Flat tires, refer to Tire condition 194
Fluid reservoir, refer to Washer fluid reservoir 61
FM, waveband 141
Folding in the mirrors, before driving into a car wash 45
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 112
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 90
Forward
– CD/DVD changer 148
– CD/DVD player 148
Forward gear, engaging, refer to Transmission positions 56
For your own safety 5
Free memory capacity, music collection 156
Front airbags 85
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 81
Fuel 189
– average consumption 66
– gauge 65
– high-quality brands 189
– quality 189
– specifications 189
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 222
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 65
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 65
Fuel filler door 188
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 188
Fuses 212

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 98
Gasoline
– refer to Average consumption 66
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 189
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 65
Gear display, refer to Displays in the instrument cluster 56
Gear indicator, automatic transmission with Steptronic 53
Gears, changing 57
Gearshift lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
– manual transmission 53
Gearshifts
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
– manual transmission 53
General driving notes 111
Glove compartment 101
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 118
Grills, refer to Air vents 92
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 222

H

Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 52
Hands-free system 14
Hazard warning flashers 14
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 142
Head airbags 85
Headlamp control, automatic 88
Headlamp flasher 59
– indicator lamp 11, 13
Heated
– mirrors 46
– rear window 94, 97
– seats 43
Heating 92
– mirrors 46
– rear window 94, 97
– seats 43
Heating and ventilation, refer to Climate 92
Heavy loads, refer to Stowing cargo 114
Height, refer to Dimensions 221
Height adjustment
– seats 42
– steering wheel 46
High beams 90
– headlamp flasher 90
– indicator lamp 13
High Definition Radio 142
High-pressure washer 204, 205
High-pressure washer 204, 205
High water, refer to Driving through water 112
Highways, refer to Route criteria 128

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Hills 112
Holders for cups 103
Home address 176
Homepage BMW 4
Hood 197
Horn 10, 11
Hot exhaust system 111
Hydraulic brake assist, refer to Dynamic Brake Control DBC 78
Hydroplaning 111

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 142
Ice warning, refer to Outside temperature warning 64
ID3 tag, refer to Information about the track 147
Identification marks
– Run-Flat Tires 195
– tire coding 193
iDrive 16
– adjusting brightness 76
– changing language 75
– changing settings 75
– changing units of measure and display format 68
– controls 16
– menu guidance 17
– operating principle 16
– overview 16
– setting the date and time 71, 72
– status information 20
iDrive operating principle 16
Ignition 50
– switched off 50
– switched on 50
Ignition key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 50
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 50
Ignition lock 50
Imprint 2
Indicator and warning lamps
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 83
Indicator and warning lamps 13
Individual air distribution 93
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 190
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 82
Initializing
– after power failure 212
– compass, refer to Calibrating 101
– Flat Tire Monitor FTM 81
– radio, refer to Station, storing 142
– refer to Setting the time and date 72
Installation location
– navigation DVD drive 118
– telephone 102
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 129
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 90
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 98
Interactive map 124
Interior lamps 90
– remote control 30
Interior motion sensor 34
Interior rearview mirror 46
– automatic dimming feature 46
– compass 100
Interlock, refer to Disengaging the remote control 53
Intermittent mode of the wipers 60
Intersection, entering, navigation 120
iPod, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 158
iPod, connecting, refer to USB-audio interface 158

J

Jacking points 211
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 214
Jump starting 214

K

Key, refer to Integrated key/ remote control 28
Keyless go, refer to Convenient access 35
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Convenient access 35
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 28
Kick-down 54
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
Knock control 189

L

Lamps
– automatic headlamp control 88
– parking lamps/low beams 88
Lamps and bulbs, replacing bulbs 208
Language, changing on Control Display 75
Lap-and-shoulder belt, refer to Safety belts 44
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 114
Last destinations 122

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Launch Control 58
Leather care 206
LED Light-emitting diodes 208
Length, refer to Dimensions 221
License plate lamp, replacing bulb 211
Light-alloy wheels 206
Light-emitting diodes LED 208
Lighter 104
– connecting electrical appliances 104
Lighting
– instruments 90
– lamps and bulbs 208
– vehicle, refer to Lamps 88
Light switch 88
Limit, refer to Speed limit 74
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 114
Lockable lug bolts, refer to Lug bolt lock 211
Lock buttons, doors, refer to Locking 32
Locking
– adjusting confirmation signal 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– without remote control, refer to Convenient access 35
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Low-beam headlamps 88
– automatic 88
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 43
Lug bolt lock 211
Luggage compartment lid 32
– convenient access 35
– emergency release 33
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– remote control 30
Lumbar support 43
LW, waveband 141

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 196
Maintenance, refer to Service Booklet
Maintenance system 202
Malfunction
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 55
– tires 81
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 73
Managing music 156
Manual air distribution 93
Manual car wash 205
Manual mode, automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 188
– transmission lock 58
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 55
Manual transmission 53
Map display 130
Map for navigation
– changing scale 130
– entering destination 124
– interactive map 124
Master key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Maximum cooling 96
Maximum speed
– with winter tires 196
M dual clutch transmission with Drivelogic
– Launch Control 58
– manually releasing transmission lock 58
– neutral 57
– reverse gear 57
Measurements, refer to Dimensions 221
Memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 43
MENU button 16
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Messages 170
Microfilter
– BMW Maintenance System 202
– for air conditioner 94
– for automatic climate control 97
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
– BMW Maintenance System 202
Mirror dimming feature 46
Mirrors 45
– automatic curb monitor 46
– exterior mirrors 45
– heating 46
– interior rearview mirror 46
– memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 43
Mobile phone
– adjusting volume 167
– connecting, refer to Mobile phone, pairing 164
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– operation via iDrive 167
– pairing 164
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
Mobile phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
Mobile phone, refer to Telephone 164

CarManuals2.com

Mobile phone, refer to the separate Owner's Manual
Modifications, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Monitor, refer to iDrive controls 16
Monitoring system for tire pressures, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 81
MP3 player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 158
MP3 player, connecting, refer to USB-audio interface 158
Multifunctional steering wheel, refer to Buttons on the steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 59
– refer to Wiper system 60
Multimedia screen, refer to iDrive 16
Music, playing 154
Music collection 153
– backup 156
– importing 157
Music player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 158
Music player, connecting, refer to USB-audio interface 158
Music search 154
My Info 171

N

Navigation announcements, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 129
Navigation data 118
Navigation drive, location 118
Navigation DVD 118
Navigation system 118
– address book 121
– bypassing a route section 129
– continuing destination guidance 128
– destination entry 119
– displaying current position 134
– entering a destination by voice 125
– entering a destination manually 119
– route list 129
– selecting destination via map 124
– selecting route criteria 128
– selecting the split screen 131
– special destinations 122
– starting destination guidance 128
– terminating destination guidance 128
– trip planner 126
– voice instructions 129
– volume adjustment 130
Nets, refer to Storage compartments 102
Neutral 57
New tires 195
NORMAL program, Dynamic Driving Control 79, 80
North-facing map 130
Number of cylinders, refer to Engine data 220
Nylon rope, refer to Tow rope 216

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for On-Board Diagnosis 202
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 189
Odometer 64
Oil, refer to Engine oil 198
Oil consumption 198
Oil level 198
Old batteries, refer to Disposal 212
Onboard tool kit 208
Opening and closing
– convenient access 35
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
– using the door lock 31
– via the remote control 29
Options, selecting for navigation 128
Outlets
– refer to Ventilation 94, 97
Outlets, refer to Air vents 92
Output, refer to Engine data 220
Outside-air mode
– automatic climate control 97
Outside-temperature display
– changing units of measure 68
– in computer 68
Outside-temperature display 64
Outside temperature warning 64
Overheated engine, refer to Coolant temperature 65
Overriding selector lever lock 55
Overview
– radio control 138

P

Paintwork care 205
Park assistant, refer to Park Distance Control 77
Park Distance Control PDC 77
Parking
– vehicle 52
Parking aid, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 77
Parking brake 52
Parking lamps 88

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Parking lamps/low beams 88
Passenger-side mirror tilt function 46
Pathway lighting 89
Personal Profile 28
Phone book 167
Phone numbers
– dialing 168
Pinch protection system
– windows 37
Placing a call, refer to telephone owner's manual
Playback lists for external devices 160
Polish 207
Pollen
– refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 97
– refer to Microfilter for air conditioner 94
Position, refer to Current position, displaying 134
Postal code, entering for navigation 120
Power failure 212
Power windows 37
Power windows, refer to Windows 36
Pressure, tires 190
Pressure monitoring, tires 81
– Flat Tire Monitor 81
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 82
Programmable buttons on the steering wheel 11
Protection function, refer to Pinch protection system
– windows 37
Providing medical assistance, refer to First add pouch 214
Puncture
– Flat Tire Monitor 81

R

Radio
– controls 138
– High Definition Radio 142
– satellite radio 144
– selecting a waveband 141
– storing stations 142
– switching on/off 138
– tone control 138
– volume 138
– Weather Band, refer to Weather information 144
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 50
Radio readiness 50
– switched off 50
– switched on 50
Radio-remote key, refer to Remote control with integrated key 28
Rain sensor 60
Random sequence
– CD/DVD changer 147
– CD/DVD player 147
Reading lamps 91
Rear fog lamps
– indicator lamp 13
Rear lamp, refer to Tail lamps
– replacing bulb 210
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 210
Rear turn signals
– replacing bulb 210
Rearview mirror, refer to Mirrors 45
Rear window defroster 94, 97
Receiving level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Reception
– quality 142
– radio station 142
Recirculated-air mode 93, 97
Recirculation of air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 93, 97
Reclining seat, refer to Backrest 42
Refueling 188
Releasing
– hood 197
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 65
Remote control 28
– battery renewal 36
– convenient access 35
– garage door opener 98
– luggage compartment lid 30
– malfunction 31, 36
– removing from the ignition lock 50
– service data 202
Replacement remote control 28
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 208
Replacing tires 195
Replacing tires, refer to New wheels and tires 195
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 65
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 140
Restraint systems
– for children 48
– refer to Safety belts 44
Retractable hardtop
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– convenient operation 30
– opening and closing 39
– remote control 30
retractable hardtop 38
Reverse
– CD/DVD changer 148
– CD/DVD player 148
Reverse gear 57
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
– manual transmission 53
Road map 130
Roadside Assistance 179, 213

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Roadside parking lamps 90
Roadworthiness test, refer to Service requirements 69
Roof load capacity 222
Rope, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 216
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 128, 129
– bypassing sections 129
– changing 128
– changing criteria 128
– displaying streets or towns/cities 129
– map display 130
– selecting 128
Route instructions, refer to Destination guidance through voice instructions 129
Route map, refer to Map display 130
Route section, changing 129
Route selection 128
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-Flat Tires 195
Runflat System Component RSC, refer to Run-Flat Tires 195
Run-Flat Tires 195
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 82
– flat tire 81
– Flat Tire Monitor 81
– new tires 195
– replacing 195
– tire inflation pressure 190
– winter tires 196

S

Safety-belt height adjustment 45
Safety belts 44
– damage 45
– indicator/warning lamp 45
– reminder 45
– sitting safely 41
Safety systems
– airbags 85
– Antilock Brake System ABS 78
– brake system 78
– driving stability control systems 78
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 78
– safety belts 44
Safety tires, refer to Run-Flat Tires 195
Satellite radio 144
– enabling channel 144
– selecting channel 145
– storing channel 145
Saving fuel 110
Screen, refer to iDrive controls 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 215
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 144
Seat adjustment
– electric 42
– mechanical 42
Seat and mirror memory 43
Seat belt reminder, refer to 'Fasten safety belts' reminder 45
Seat heating 43
Seats 41
– adjusting electrically 42
– adjusting the seats 42
– heating 43
– memory, refer to Seat and mirror memory 43
– saving a setting, refer to Seat and mirror memory 43
– sitting safely 41
Securing cargo 106
Securing the vehicle
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
Selecting new scale for navigation 130
Selector lever 56
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
Selector lever lock, refer to Changing selector lever positions, shiftlock 54
Selector lever positions
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Service car, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Service data in the remote control 202
Service Interval Display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 202
Service Request 183
Service requirement display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 202
Service requirements 69
Services status 184
Servotronic 85
Settings
– changing on Control Display 75
– clock, 12h/24h mode 72
– DVD 149
– language 75
Settings and information 68
Shifting 57
Shifting, sport automatic transmission 57
Shifting gears
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 54
– manual transmission 53
Shiftlock
– automatic transmission, refer to Changing selector lever positions 54
Shift paddles on steering wheel 57
Short commands for the voice activation system 223
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 128
Side airbags 85

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Side windows, refer to Windows 36
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10, 11
Sitting safely 41
– with airbags 41
– with safety belts 41
Ski bag for convertible, refer to Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag 105
Slot for remote control 50
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 104
SMS 171
Snap-in adapter
– inserting/removing 174
– use 164
Snap-in adapter, refer to Center armrest storage compartment 102
Socket, On-Board Diagnosis OBD 202
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 104
SOS, refer to Sending an Emergency Request 213
Sound output for entertainment on/off 138
Spare fuses, 212
Spare fuses, refer to Fuses 212
Special destinations 122
Speed
– Run-Flat Tires 82
– with winter tires 196
Speed limit 74
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 74
Speedometer 12
Speed Volume 139
SPORT+ program, Dynamic Driving Control 79, 80
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 79, 80
Sport program with sport automatic transmission 57
Spray nozzles, refer to Cleaning windshield and headlamps 60
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 78, 79
Start/stop button 50
– starting the engine 51
– switching off the engine 52
Starting, refer to Starting the engine 51
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 214
Starting difficulties
– jump starting 214
Starting the engine
– start/stop button 50
State/province for navigation 119
Station, selecting
– radio 141
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steam jet 204, 205
Steering wheel 46
– adjustment 46
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– lock 50
– locking with convenient access 35
– shift paddles 57
Steering wheel buttons, refer to Shift paddles 57
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 53
Storage 207
Storage compartments 102
Storage nets 104
Storing music 153
Storing seat positions, refer to Seat and mirror memory 43
Storing tires 196
Stowage, refer to Storage compartments 102
Stowing cargo 114
Street, entering, navigation 120
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 190
Surface ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 64
SVCD 148
SW, waveband 141
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching off
– engine 52
Switching off the engine
– start/stop button 50
Switching on
– audio 138
– CD/DVD changer 138
– CD/DVD player 138
– radio 138
Symbols 4
– status information 20
– traffic bulletins for navigation system 131

T

Tachometer 64
Tailgate
– opening from inside 33
Tailgate, refer to Luggage compartment lid 32
Tail lamps 210
– replacing bulb 210
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 222
Technical data 220
– capacities 222
– dimensions 221
Technical modifications, refer to For your own safety 5
Telephone 164
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– refer to separate Owner's Manual
TeleService, activating 183
TeleService Diagnosis 180
TeleService Help 180

CarManuals2.com

Temperature
– air conditioner 94
– automatic climate control 95
– changing unit of measure 68
– coolant, refer to Coolant temperature 65
Temperature display
– outside temperature 64
– outside temperature warning 64
– setting the units 68
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 61
Tensioning straps, refer to Securing cargo 114
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 211
Through-loading opening with integrated transport bag 105
Tilt alarm sensor 34
Tilt function, passenger-side mirror 46
Tire inflation pressure 190
– loss 81, 83
Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 81
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM
– resetting the system 83
– system limitations 82
– warning lamp 83
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 82
Tire puncture, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 81
Tire Quality Grading 193
Tires
– age 193, 195
– air loss 83
– breaking in 110
– changing, refer to Changing wheels 211
– condition 194
– damage 194
– inflation pressure 190
– labels 193
– minimum tread depth 194
– new wheels and tires 195
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 81
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 82
– puncture 81
– replacing 195
– Run-Flat 195
– size 193
– storage 196
– tread depth 194
– wear indicators, refer to Minimum tread depth 194
– wheel/tire combination, refer to Correct wheels and tires 195
– winter tires 196
TMC station, refer to Traffic bulletins 131
Tone
– control 138
– middle setting 140
Tools, refer to Onboard tool kit 208
Top, refer to Retractable hardtop 38
Top 50 of music collection 155
Torque, refer to Engine data 220
Tow bar 216
Tow fitting 215
– screw thread 215
Tow fittings for tow-starting and towing away 215
Towing 215
– car with automatic transmission 215
– methods 216
Towing and tow-starting 215
Town/city, for navigation 119
Tow rope 216
Tow-starting 215, 217
TPM, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 82
Track
– selecting on CD 146
Traction control, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 78
TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 79
Traffic bulletins
– categories 133
Traffic bulletins for navigation
– during destination guidance 133
– in map display 133
Traffic bulletins for navigation 131
Traffic bulletins for navigation system
– filtering 133
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic bulletins 131
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 53
– dual clutch transmission 55
– Launch Control 58
– manual transmission 53
– neutral 57
– overriding selector lever lock for automatic transmission with Steptronic 55
– reverse gear 57
– transmission lock, releasing manually 58
Transmission interlock
– refer to Changing selector lever position 54
– refer to P Park 54

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Transmission lock, releasing manually 58
Transmission positions 56
Transporting children safely 48
Transport securing devices, refer to Securing cargo 114
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 194
Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 64
Triple turn signal activation 59
Trip odometer 64
Trip planner 126
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 221
Turn signal indicators
– indicator/warning lamp 12
– triple turn signal 59
Turn signals 59
Tying down loads, refer to Cargo loading 114

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 193
Units
– average consumption 68
– temperature 68
Universal garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 98
Universal mobile phone preparation package, refer to separate Owner's Manual
Universal remote control 98
Unlatching, refer to Unlocking 35
Unlocking
– from inside 32
– from outside 29
– luggage compartment lid 35
– setting unlocking characteristics 29
– without remote control, refer to Convenient access 35
USB-audio interface 158
USB interface 101

V

VCD 148
Vehicle
– battery 212
– breaking in 110
– cargo loading 113
– Identification Number, refer to Engine compartment 198
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 221
– parking 52
– weight 222
Vehicle jack 211
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 134
Vehicle storage 207
Ventilation 97
– air conditioner 94
– draft-free 94, 97
Ventilation, refer to Climate 92
Vents, refer to Air vents 92
Vents, refer to Ventilation 94, 97
Video menu 148
Video playback 148
Voice, refer to Destination guidance through voice instructions 129
Voice commands
– short commands 223
Voice instructions from navigation system 129
– repeating 130
– switching on/off 129
– volume 130
Volume 138
– audio sources 138
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 222
– mobile phone 167
– voice instructions 130
Volume balance, tone setting 139

CarManuals2.com

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 73
Warning triangle 214
Washer fluid 61
– content of the reservoir 61
Washer fluid reservoir 61
Waste tray, refer to Ashtray 104
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 112
Water penetration 204, 205
Waveband on the radio 141
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 194
Weather information 144
Weights 222
Welcome lamps 88
Wheel/tire combination, refer to Correct wheels and tires 195
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 221
Wheels, new 195
Wheels and tires 190
Width, refer to Dimensions 221
Wind deflector 39
Windows 36
– convenient operation 30
– opening, closing 37
– pinch protection system 37
Windows, defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 94
Windows, defrosting and defogging
– air conditioner 94
Windows, indicator on Control Display 16
Windshield
– cleaning 60
– defrosting and defogging 94
Windshield, defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 94

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

Windshield wash 60
– filling capacity, reservoir 222
– nozzles 61
– reservoir for washer fluid 61
– washer fluid 61
Windshield wiper blades, changing 208
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 60
Winter tires 196
– storage 196
Wiper blade replacement 208
Wiper system 60
Word-matching principle for navigation 127
Work in the engine compartment 197
Wrench/screwdriver, refer to Onboard tool kit 208

X

Xenon lamps
– replacing bulbs 209

Y

Your individual vehicle
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 28

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 2 602 116 ue iDrive

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 116 - © 01/09 BMW AG